

THESIS DECLARATION

I, Diem Ly, declare that:

This thesis is my account of my research and has been substantially accomplished during enrolment in this degree, except where other sources are fully acknowledged.

This thesis does not contain material which has been submitted for the award of any other degree or diploma in my name, in any university or other tertiary institution. In the future, no part of this thesis will be used in a submission in my name, for any other degree or diploma in any university or other tertiary institution without the prior approval of Murdoch University and where applicable, any partner institution responsible for the joint-award of this degree.

This thesis does not contain any material previously published or written by another person, except where due reference has been made in the text. This thesis does not violate or infringe any copyright, trademark, patent, or other rights whatsoever of any person.

The following approvals were obtained prior to commencing the relevant work described in this thesis:

- Murdoch University Institutional Biosafety Committee (IBC) approval number 171
- Risk Assessment Processes (RAMP) reference number RAMP0902_01_18
- Working with Biological Materials (WBM) number WBM/18/245 (approved date 27 February 2018)
- Approved Arrangements for Accredited Persons (Classes 1 to 8) attainment number 39766 (attainment date 2 March 2018)

This thesis does not contain work that I have published, nor work under review for publication.

Signature:

Date: 12 August 2021

ABSTRACT

Potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) is the most important tuber food crop worldwide and a significant component of food security. A major use of potato is their processing into crisps and French fries. Potato tubers that accumulate hexose sugars and exhibit browning after frying are rejected, causing economic losses and waste. Acrylamide formation when potato tubers are deep-fried also presents a health risk for consumers because acrylamide is a potential neurotoxin/ carcinogen. The aim of this project was to upgrade existing potato cultivars (Atlantic and Desiree) using gene editing (CRISPR/Cas9) to reduce the expression of the *vacuolar invertase* and *asparagine synthetase 1* genes, to minimise cold-induced sweetening and acrylamide formation in fried potato products.

The Cas9 and gRNAs were delivered into plant cells either as expression vectors using *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* or directly by particle bombardment as a ribonucleoprotein complex. A total of 20 transgenic edited events and one transgene-free edited event were obtained. Ten transgenic events were further analysed, and small insertions and deletions that ranged from 1 bp to 35 bp accounted for 67.9% of mutation frequency. Biochemical analysis from cold-stored, edited tubers (four months at 4°C) revealed that hexose sugars in cold-stored tubers and acrylamide levels in crisps were significantly reduced, accompanied by a noticeably improved colour intensity of fried crisps. Hexose sugar in edited events was reduced up to 21 times and was extremely low in one event; only 0.02 mg/gfw glucose and 0.13 mg/gfw fructose were detected. The acrylamide content was decreased up to 3.7 times in Atlantic-derived events and 6.8 times in Desiree-derived events, and the lowest recorded acrylamide level was 332.9 ng/g. Overall, gene-edited events generated in this project exhibited better properties for human consumption/health. This research successfully demonstrated that CRISPR/Cas9 can be used to improve economically important potato cultivars.

LIST OF CONFERENCES

Diem N.P. Ly, Michael G.K. Jones, Sadia Iqbal, Stephen P. Milroy. 2020. CRISPR for healthier CRISPS (Poster). Plant and Animal Genome XXVIII Conference, San Diego, California, USA.

Diem N.P. Ly, Michael G.K. Jones, Sadia Iqbal, Stephen P. Milroy. 2019. Developing novel potato properties using genome editing. Murdoch University Annual Research Symposium, Murdoch. Western Australia, Australia.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

THESIS DECLARATION	i
ABSTRACT	ii
LIST OF CONFERENCES	iii
TABLE OF CONTENTS	iv
LIST OF FIGURES	viii
LIST OF TABLES	xi
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS	xii
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	xiv
Chapter 1 Introduction and literature review	1
1.1 General introduction	2
1.2 Introduction to the potato crop	3
1.2.1 Origin, distribution and production	3
1.2.2 Consumption and nutritional value	5
1.3 Improving potato properties through genetic engineering	7
1.3.1 Micropropagation of potato	8
1.3.2 Genetic modification.....	9
1.3.2.1 Cold-induced sweetening (CIS) in potato tubers	10
1.3.2.2 The acrylamide-forming potential in fried potato	14
1.4 Gene editing	16
1.4.1 The CRISPR/Cas9 system.....	17
1.4.2 Gene editing in potato with CRISPR/Cas9.....	20
1.5 Project aim and objectives	25
Chapter 2 Optimisation of tissue culture regeneration for the potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree	26
2.1 Introduction.....	27
2.2 Methodology	28
2.2.1 Preparation of media for in vitro culture of potato explants	28
2.2.2 Regeneration of potato plants from leaf explants.....	29
2.2.3 Induction of microtubers in culture	32
2.3 Results.....	33
2.3.1 Response of Atlantic and Desiree leaf explants to tissue culture regeneration.....	33
2.3.2 Microtuber induction.....	38

2.4 Discussion	39
Chapter 3 <i>In silico</i> identification and <i>in vitro</i> testing the efficiency of gRNAs to target Cas9 cleavage of the <i>VInv</i> and <i>AS1</i> genes	44
3.1 Introduction	45
3.2 Methodology	46
3.2.1 Identification of target gene sequences and primer design	46
3.2.2 Genomic DNA extraction and PCR amplification	48
3.2.3 Plant RNA extraction and PCR amplification	50
3.2.4 Cloning of PCR products of <i>VInv</i> 1 and <i>VInv</i> 3 primers.....	51
3.2.4.1 Ligation and transformation	51
3.2.4.2 Colony PCR and extraction of DNA plasmid.....	53
3.2.5 Sequencing reactions.....	53
3.2.6 <i>In silico</i> identification of gRNA target sites for <i>VInv</i> and <i>AS1</i> genes	54
3.2.7 <i>In vitro</i> Cas9 cleavage assay	55
3.3 Results.....	57
3.3.1 PCR amplification of target genes.....	57
3.3.2 Sequencing the PCR products and identification of target sites	59
3.3.3 <i>In vitro</i> Cas9 cleavage assay	64
3.4 Discussion	66
Chapter 4 Generation of transgenic potato events expressing Cas9 protein and gRNAs targeting <i>vacuolar invertase</i> and <i>asparagine synthetase 1</i> genes.....	69
4.1 Introduction.....	70
4.2 Methodology	71
4.2.1 Assembly of gRNA constructs	71
4.2.2 Assembly of the CRISPR/Cas9 transformation vector	74
4.2.2.1 Constructing plant transformation vectors with dual-gRNA system targeting one gene	74
4.2.2.2 Constructing plant transformation vectors with four gRNA targeting two genes simultaneously.....	76
4.2.3 Transformation of <i>A. tumefaciens</i> competent cells with the assembled CRISPR/Cas9 vectors.....	78
4.2.3.1 Preparation of freeze-thaw <i>A. tumefaciens</i> GV3101 competent cells	78
4.2.3.2 Delivery of the CRISPR/Cas9 vectors into competent cells of <i>A. tumefaciens</i>	79
4.2.4 Transformation of leaf discs with <i>A.tumefaciens</i> harbouring the CRISPR/Cas9 vector.....	79

4.2.4.1	Preparation of leaf discs	79
4.2.4.2	<i>A. tumefaciens</i> -mediated plant transformation	80
4.2.5	Screening for putative transformants and mutants	83
4.2.6	<i>In silico</i> protein translation of edited gene sequences	84
4.3	Results.....	84
4.3.1	Transformation vectors expressing Cas9 and gRNAs were assembled successfully	84
4.3.2	CRISPR/Cas9-induced mutations in transgenic potato plants	86
4.3.3	Assessing mutation types and frequencies.....	90
4.3.4	<i>In silico</i> protein translation of edited gene sequences.....	93
4.3.4.1	<i>Vacuolar invertase</i> gene.....	93
4.3.4.2	<i>Asparagine synthetase 1</i> gene	95
4.4	Discussion	96
Chapter 5	Gene editing with CRISPR/Cas9 via PEG-mediated protoplast transfection and RNP-	
	particle bombardment	100
5.1	Introduction.....	101
5.2	Methodology	102
5.2.1	Protoplast transfection assay	102
5.2.1.1	Preparation of media and solutions.....	102
5.2.1.2	Protoplast isolation from leaves	103
5.2.1.3	PEG-mediated protoplast transfection with plasmid DNA	105
5.2.1.4	DNA extraction and molecular analysis of transfected protoplasts	105
5.2.2	Particle bombardment with RNPs.....	106
5.2.2.1	Preparation of gold particles for bombardment.....	106
5.2.2.2	RNP assembly of Cas9 protein and gRNA	106
5.2.2.3	Bombardment of RNPs into leaf-derived calli of potato.....	107
5.2.2.4	Molecular analysis of regenerated shoots from RNP-treated calli.....	107
5.3	Results.....	108
5.3.1	Protoplast isolation and transfection with plasmid DNA	108
5.3.2	Particle bombardment with RNP-coated gold particles	111
5.4	Discussion	112
Chapter 6	Assessing the levels of sugars in cold-stored tubers and acrylamide content in crisps	
	from gene-edited potato plants.....	115
6.1	Introduction.....	116
6.2	Methodology	117

6.2.1	Growing potato plants for tubers	117
6.2.2	Sugar assay.....	117
6.2.2.1	Extraction of soluble sugars	117
6.2.2.2	Sugar quantification assay	118
6.2.3	Cold-stored tuber processing and assessment of potato crisp colour intensity	118
6.2.4	Acrylamide ELISA assay	119
6.2.4.1	Acrylamide extraction	119
6.2.4.2	Derivatisation of acrylamide	120
6.2.4.3	ELISA assay	120
6.2.5	Statistical analysis	121
6.3	Results.....	122
6.3.1	Total weight and size of harvested tubers from wildtype and gene-edited plants.....	122
6.3.2	Sugar content in cold-stored tubers	123
6.3.3	Colour intensity of fried potato crisps	126
6.3.4	Acrylamide content in fried crisps	128
6.4	Discussion	129
Chapter 7	General discussion	133
7.1	Overview.....	134
7.2	The two-step regeneration system yielded a high shoot induction rate in potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree.....	136
7.3	High frequency of CRISPR/Cas9-induced mutations with the use of multiple gRNAs	137
7.4	Mutations in target genes affected the activity of translated proteins	138
7.5	RNP-particle bombardment is a promising approach to generate transgene-free gene-edited plants.....	140
7.6	Conclusion and future recommendations	142

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1-1. Production share of potato by region in 2018 (FAOSTAT (2020b)).	4
Figure 1-2. Potato production in Australia by States in 2018-2019 (ABS, 2020)	5
Figure 1-3. Proposed pathways of carbohydrate metabolism in potato tubers during cold storage (Malone et al., 2006).	12
Figure 1-4. Contrasting colours of potato crisps (Wu et al., 2011).	12
Figure 2-1. Response of Atlantic and Desiree leaf explants on shoot induction treatment T2.	34
Figure 2-2. Atlantic and Desiree leaf explants after two weeks on shoot induction medium of the treatments T3 and T4.	34
Figure 2-3. Atlantic and Desiree leaf explants on shoot induction medium of the treatment T5.	35
Figure 2-4. Atlantic leaf explants after five days on callus induction medium and after three weeks on shoot induction medium of the treatment S3.	37
Figure 2-5. Microtuberisation of Desiree and Atlantic from multi-nodal explants on MS medium with 80 g/L sucrose.	39
Figure 3-1. Structures and primer flanking regions (A) <i>vacuolar invertase</i> and (B) <i>asparagine synthetase 1</i> genes.	47
Figure 3-2. Gel electrophoresis of PCR products using VInv1 and VInv2 primers.	58
Figure 3-3. Gel electrophoresis of the PCR amplifying a <i>GAPDH</i> gene fragment from cDNA of potato.	58
Figure 3-4. Gel electrophoresis of RT-PCR using VInv3 and AS1 primers.	59
Figure 3-5. Multiple sequence alignment of PCR products amplified with the VInv2 primer pair from Atlantic and Desiree.	59
Figure 3-6. Multiple sequence alignment of RT-PCR products amplified with AS1 primer pair from Atlantic and Desiree.	60
Figure 3-7. Multiple sequence alignments of cloned PCR amplicons of the VInv1 primer pair from Atlantic and Desiree.	61
Figure 3-8. Multiple sequence alignment of cloned PCR products of Atlantic using VInv1 primers and high-fidelity DNA polymerase.	62

Figure 3-9. Multiple sequence alignments of cloned RT-PCR products of the VInv3 primer pair from Desiree and Atlantic.....	63
Figure 3-10. Target sites for gRNAs for <i>vacuolar invertase</i> and <i>asparagine synthetase 1</i> genes.....	64
Figure 3-11. Gel electrophoresis of PCR for generating DNA templates for gRNA transcription.....	65
Figure 3-12. Gel electrophoresis analysing gRNAs.	65
Figure 3-13. Expected DNA products of Cas9 cleavage assay.....	66
Figure 3-14. Gel electrophoresis of Cas9 cleavage assay.	66
Figure 4-1. Map of the pUC119-gRNA vector.	72
Figure 4-2. Diagram of the overlapping PCR method for assembling gRNA expression cassettes.....	72
Figure 4-3. Map of the pFGC-pcoCas9 vector.	76
Figure 4-4. The ASVI expression cassette contains four gRNAs appended to individual gRNA scaffolds and the tRNA (transfer RNA) processing system.	77
Figure 4-5. Map of the pFN117-Cas9 vector.....	78
Figure 4-6. Agarose gel electrophoresis image of amplified products from the first PCR round for assembling gRNA expression cassettes.	85
Figure 4-7. Agarose gel electrophoresis image of amplified products from the second PCR round for assembling gRNA expression cassettes.	85
Figure 4-8. Agarose gel electrophoresis image of amplified products from colony screening PCR for the insertion of the dual-gRNA expression cassette in the vector pFGC-pcoCas9.....	86
Figure 4-9. Agarose gel electrophoresis images amplified products from colony screening PCR for the insertion of the ASVI construct in pFN117-Cas9 and pFGC-pcoCas9 vectors.....	86
Figure 4-10. Agarose gel electrophoresis images of amplified products from PCR screening for <i>BlpR</i> gene in Desiree wildtype and putative transgenic shoots.....	87
Figure 4-11. Agarose gel electrophoresis image of products from PCR screening for the <i>BlpR</i> gene in putative transgenic Desiree shoots transformed with the pFGC-ASVI vector.....	88
Figure 4-12. Representative chromatograms from direct sequencing of PCR products after amplifying g67 and g10 target sites on the <i>vacuolar invertase</i> gene of the potato cultivar Desiree transformed with the <i>A. tumefaciens</i> harbouring the pFGC-ASVI vector.....	88

Figure 4-13. Agarose gel electrophoresis image of products from PCR screening for integration of the ASVI construct in recovered shoots from leaf disc explants of potato cultivars Desiree and Atlantic transformed with <i>A.tumefaciens</i> harbouring pFN117-ASVI vector.....	89
Figure 4-14. Representative chromatograms from direct sequencing of products after PCR amplification of <i>g4</i> and <i>g7</i> target sites for the <i>asparagine synthetase 1</i> gene of the potato cultivar Atlantic transformed with the <i>A.tumefaciens</i> harbouring pFN117-ASVI vector	89
Figure 4-15. Frequency of CRISPR/Cas9-induced mutation types in ten transgenic potato events.....	91
Figure 4-16. CRISPR/Cas9-induced mutation type and frequency.	93
Figure 4-17. Partial alignment of vacuolar invertase DNA and protein sequences of the reference sequence and edited events with mutations at <i>g67</i>	94
Figure 4-18. Partial alignment of vacuolar invertase DNA and protein sequences of the reference sequence and edited events with mutations at <i>g10</i>	95
Figure 4-19. Partial alignment of asparagine synthetase 1 DNA and protein sequences of the reference sequence and edited events with mutations at <i>g7</i>	96
Figure 5-1. Isolated protoplasts from <i>in vitro</i> leaves of potato cultivars Desiree and Atlantic.	109
Figure 5-2. Gel electrophoresis of products from PCR amplified target regions in potato cultivar Desiree after protoplast transfection.	110
Figure 5-3. Multiple sequence alignment of <i>g7</i> target site amplified from DNA of Desiree wildtype and control protoplasts.....	110
Figure 5-4. PCR amplicon sequencing and <i>in silico</i> protein translation of Desiree gene-edited event DSRNP217.	111
Figure 6-1. Layout of the microtiter plate for the ELISA assay.	121
Figure 6-2. Potato tuber size and total tuber weight per plant.....	123
Figure 6-3. Concentration of glucose, fructose, and sucrose in cold-stored potato tubers of wildtype and gene-edited events.	125
Figure 6-4. Crisps made from potato tubers of wildtype and gene-edited events	127
Figure 6-5. Colour intensity of potato crisps.....	128
Figure 6-6. Acrylamide content in potato crisps.....	129

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1-1. Nutritional components per 175 g of boiled potato with skin (McGregor, 2007).....	6
Table 1-2. Summary of different nucleases associated with the CRISPR system (Nakade et al., 2017)	18
Table 1-3. Application of CRISPR/Cas9 in potato.....	23
Table 2-1. Media composition for shoot regeneration from leaf explants of potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree.	31
Table 2-2. Media composition for <i>in vitro</i> shoot regeneration optimisation of potato cultivar Atlantic.	32
Table 2-3. Shoot regeneration rate of Desiree and Atlantic leaf explants after eight weeks of culture on treatments T1 to T7	35
Table 2-4. Shoot regeneration rate of Atlantic leaf explants after four and eight weeks on shoot induction medium for treatments S1 to S8.	38
Table 2-5. Microtuberisation of potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree from multiple-nodal explants under different culture conditions.	39
Table 3-1. Primers for <i>vacuolar invertase</i> and <i>asparagine synthetase 1</i> genes	47
Table 3-2. PCR reaction composition.....	49
Table 3-3. Reaction composition for first-strand cDNA synthesis.	51
Table 3-4. Reagents of a ligation reaction	52
Table 3-5. Primers for assembling gRNA transcription templates.....	55
Table 4-1. Primers for assembly of gRNA constructs by overlapping PCR.....	74
Table 4-2. Primers used in PCR screening for gRNA constructs in the transformation vectors	76
Table 4-3. Primers for amplifying guide RNA target regions and amplicon sequencing	84
Table 4-4. Mutation rates in <i>vacuolar invertase</i> and <i>asparagine synthetase 1</i> genes of Atlantic and Desiree transgenic edited events.	90

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

2,4-D	2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid
AS1	asparagine synthetase 1
BA	benzyladenine
BAP	benzyladenine purine
bp	base pair
Cas9	CRISPR associated protein 9
cDNA	complementary DNA
cds	coding sequence
CIM	callus induction medium
CIS	cold-induced sweetening
CRISPR	Clustered Regularly Interspaced Short Palindromic Repeat
CTAB	hexadecyltrimethylammonium bromide
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid
DSB	double-stranded break
DSR	direct shoot regeneration
GA ₃	gibberellic acid
gRNA	guide RNA
HR	homologous recombination
mRNA	messenger RNA
MS	Murashige & Skoog basal medium
MSGV	Murashige & Skoog Modified Basal Medium with Gamborg Vitamins
NAA	naphthaleneacetic acid
NHEJ	non-homologous end-joining
nptII	neomycin phosphotransferase II
nt	nucleotide
PAM	protospacer adjacent motif
PCR	polymerase chain reaction
PEG	polyethylene glycol
RNA	ribonucleic acid
RNAi	RNA interference
RNP	ribonucleoprotein
SDN	site-directed nuclease

SIM	shoot induction medium
SNP	single nucleotide polymorphism
TALEN	transcription activator-like effector nuclease
VInv/ VINV	vacuolar invertase
ZFN	zinc finger nuclease
ZR	trans-zeatin riboside

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This research was supported by an Australian Government Research Training Program (RTP) Scholarship. This research was funded by International Tuition Fee Scholarship (ITFS) and Murdoch Strategic Scholarship (MIPSS).

Firstly, I would like to express my deepest gratitude and appreciation to my supervisors: Professor Michael G.K. Jones, Dr Sadia Iqbal and Dr Stephen Milroy, for their wise guidance, patience, motivation, and gracious encouragement throughout my PhD journey. I consider myself very fortunate to be their student and have benefited greatly from their wealth of knowledge and meticulous editing.

Secondly, I am grateful to Dr John Fosu-Nyarko and my colleagues for their advice, enlightening suggestions, and great support. I also wish to thank Dr Dave Berryman and Ms Frances Brigg at Western Australian State Agricultural Biotechnology Centre (SABC) for their technical assistance.

Finally, I wish to acknowledge my parents and younger sister for their greatest, unconditional love and endless support. I thank my mom and dad for inspiring me to study and pursue knowledge since my childhood. I thank my sister for her love and for taking care of our parents in my absence. I would like to pay my special regards to my partner, Viet Dang, who has always been there for me from the very beginning of this journey. I would not have made it this far without them.

Thank you all.

Dedicated to

My parents and younger sister

Chapter 1

Introduction and literature review

1 1.1 General introduction

2 Potato plays an essential role in the world's food security as one of the most significant food crops.
3 It is the fourth most important crop (after wheat, rice and maize) and the most widely grown tuber
4 crop. It is used as a freshly cooked vegetable, although almost half of the harvested potato tubers
5 are processed into crisps and French fries or related frozen products ([USDA, 2017](#)). During
6 processing, potato with undesirable characteristics, such as excessive browning after frying, are
7 rejected by processing plants, causing economic loss and waste. The acrylamide level in fried
8 potatoes is a health issue because acrylamide has been recognised as a neurotoxin and carcinogen,
9 and has been classified as probably carcinogenic to humans (Group 2A) by the International Agency
10 for Research on Cancer (IARC) ([Lyon, 1994](#), [SCF, 2002](#)). Improving potato through conventional
11 breeding is a time-consuming challenge due to its heterozygosity and polyploid nature. A promising
12 solution to improve its nutritional properties is that the potato genome can now be manipulated, for
13 example, to down-regulate or silence the genes linked to browning and acrylamide production on
14 processing. The genes linked to these characteristics are *vacuolar invertase (VInv)* and *asparagine*
15 *synthetase 1 (AS1)* ([Bhaskar et al., 2010](#), [Chawla et al., 2012](#)). Conventional breeding to achieve the
16 same ends would take up to 20 years or more to generate a new commercialized variety. With new
17 breeding technologies such as gene editing, the time needed for generating an improved potato
18 variety may be shortened: the process is more direct, precise and can be used to improve an existing
19 and accepted variety.

20 The bacterial 'Clustered Regularly Interspaced Short Palindromic Repeat' (CRISPR) system and its
21 associated protein Cas9 has been developed recently as a new genome-editing (or preferably 'gene
22 editing') tool, with its first application in plants reported by [Feng et al. \(2013\)](#). It is essentially a
23 system to generate targeted mutations and uses two components, a double-stranded DNA nuclease
24 (e.g. Cas9) and an RNA-based guide system, abbreviated CRISPR/Cas9. This editing system can be
25 delivered into plant cells using *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, or it can be pre-assembled to make a

1 ribonucleoprotein (RNP) complex and then introduced into protoplasts or cells. The latter method
2 can generate transgene-free gene-edited plants with desirable traits: such plants are now exempt
3 from being regarded as genetically modified plants in Australia and increasingly in other countries
4 including USA, Canada, Japan, South Africa and most countries in South America ([Menz et al., 2020](#),
5 [Gupta et al., 2021](#)).

6 This project applied the CRISPR/Cas9 system to potato to silence or down-regulate the *Vlnv* and *AS1*
7 genes; the aim was to reduce excessive browning caused by cold-induced sweetening and
8 acrylamide production on deep-fat frying of potato.

9 **1.2 Introduction to the potato crop**

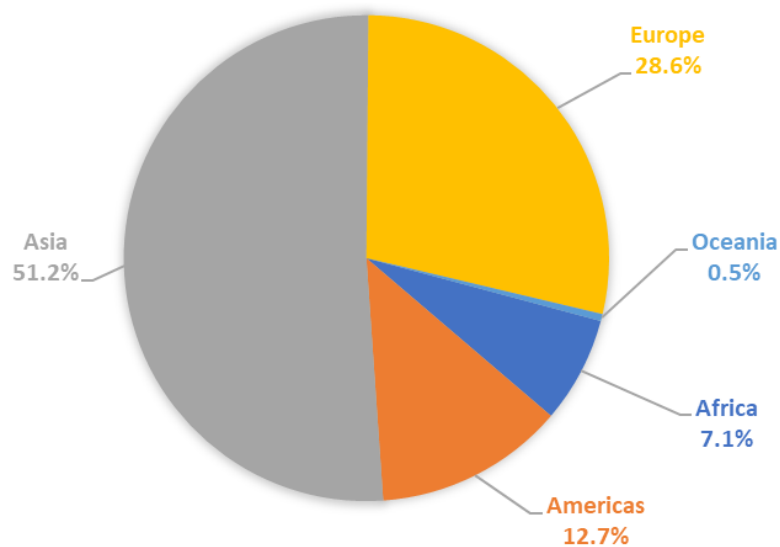
10 **1.2.1 Origin, distribution and production**

11 Potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) ($2n = 4x = 48$) belongs to the genus *Solanum* which has more than a
12 thousand recognized species ([Machida-Hirano, 2015](#)). The cultivated potato and its wild relatives
13 originated in the Andes, western South America ([de Haan and Rodriguez, 2016](#)). The most extensive
14 potato collection at the International Potato Center (CIP) holds more than 7,000 known varieties and
15 accessions, including wild and cultivated potato ([CIP, 2017](#)).

16 From the Andes, potato was introduced to Spain in 1567, France in 1574 and England in 1580. It was
17 documented that from England, potato was transported to Bermuda in 1610 and to Kenya in 1880.

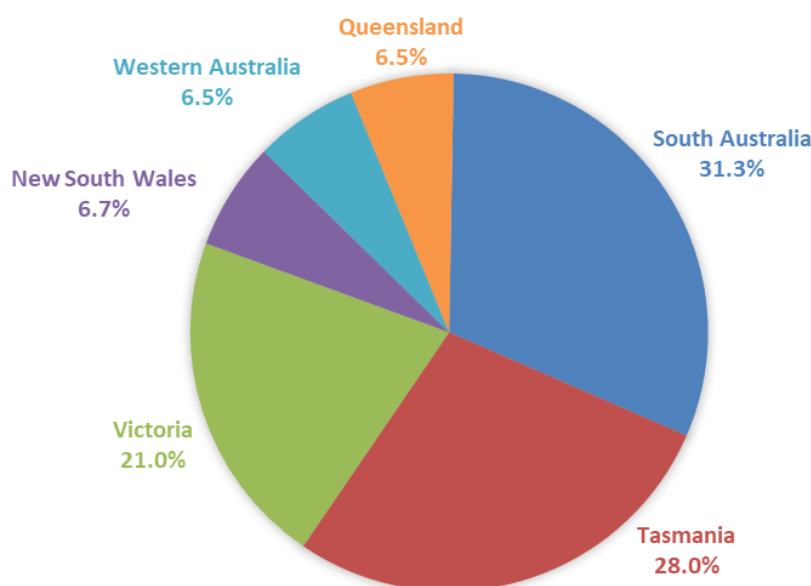
18 From early in the sixteenth to the middle of the twentieth centuries, this crop reached India, Sri
19 Lanka, China, America, Indonesia, Kenya and Saudi Arabia ([de Haan and Rodriguez, 2016](#)). After its
20 widespread distribution worldwide, potato soon became a staple crop for human consumption
21 because farmers can produce more food with less time and cultivation area. Potato is cultivated on
22 approximately 17.5 million hectares across most continents, with more than 368 million tonnes
23 harvested in 2018 ([FAOSTAT, 2020b](#)). Notably, potato crops produce a higher yield with more dry
24 matter and minerals per hectare than most other food crops. The global average yield of potato in

1 2018 was approximately 20.9 t/ha, while comparable values for maize, rice and wheat are 5.9 t/ha,
2 4.6 t/ha and 3.4 t/ha, respectively ([FAOSTAT, 2020b](#)). Asia now accounts for more than half the
3 world's production, while Oceania (including Australia and New Zealand) contributes 0.5% of potato
4 production (Figure 1-1). China is currently the top potato producer with 90 million tonnes harvested
5 in 2018, followed by India with 48 million tonnes and Ukraine with 22 million tonnes ([FAOSTAT,](#)
6 [2020b](#)).



7
8 **Figure 1-1. Production share of potato by region in 2018 ([FAOSTAT \(2020b\)](#)).**

9 In Australia, the total potato production area is approximately 32.4 thousand hectares, producing
10 1.2 million tonnes in the 2018-2019 period ([ABS, 2020](#)). Interestingly, Australia's potato yield was
11 37.8 t/ha, which is substantially higher than the world average. Among States that produce potato
12 in Australia, Western Australia (WA) contributes 6.5 % of the total (Figure 1-2). Although WA is not
13 the top national potato producer, it is the only state free from many diseases affecting potato
14 production present in other areas. The yield of potato in WA is the second-highest in the country
15 (42.5 t/ha) after Tasmania (54.3 t/ha); ([ABS, 2020](#)). Also, it has a highly organized production
16 system, and the proximity to the growing markets of Asia provides an opportunity to increase
17 exports ([Milroy and Jones, 2017](#)).



1
2 **Figure 1-2. Potato production in Australia by States in 2018-2019 ([ABS, 2020](#))**

3 Fresh and frozen potatoes play a minor role in potato trading. In 2016, approximately 14 million
4 tonnes of fresh potato, 7.8 million tonnes of frozen potato products and half a million tonnes of
5 potato flour were exported ([FAOSTAT, 2020a](#)). More than 60 % of the potato produced went into
6 processing in Australia, with the remaining going to the fresh market ([ABS, 2020](#)). In contrast,
7 potatoes produced in WA are mainly for the fresh market; only 23 % are processed ([ABS, 2020](#)).

8 **1.2.2 Consumption and nutritional value**

9 According to the CIP, less than half of harvested potatoes are used as fresh vegetables for human
10 consumption; the rest is processed into food products, food ingredients, industrial starch, livestock
11 feeding or used as seed tubers ([CIP, 2018](#)). Potato starch is used intensively in some industries as a
12 texture or adhesive agent, filler, or biodegradable plastic parts. Waste from potato processing can
13 be fermented to make bioethanol. Global potato consumption is shifting from fresh to processed
14 food, with more than seven million tons of potato made into French fries alone ([CIP, 2018](#)).

15 The potato tuber is not only a good source of dietary fibre and antioxidants, but it also has a
16 relatively low level of fat (Table 1-1). The fat content in potato tubers is even lower than in cooked

1 rice and pasta ([Camire et al., 2009](#)). Vitamin C is the predominant vitamin in potato tubers; it can be
 2 as high as 145 mg per 100 g dry weight in some cultivars ([Camire et al., 2009](#)). Several B vitamins are
 3 also present in potato, with vitamin B6 being the most abundant. On the other hand, carbohydrates
 4 make up approximately 75 % of the total dry matter, where starch is the predominant carbohydrate
 5 ([Camire et al., 2009](#)). The presence of vitamins, minerals and antioxidants in the tuber make potato
 6 a good food source that can help prevent human malnutrition.

7 **Table 1-1. Nutritional components per 175 g of boiled potato with skin ([McGregor, 2007](#))**

	Per 175 g	% Daily value*
Vitamin C	15.75 mg	44
Vitamin B6	0.58 mg	29
Potassium	753 mg	22
Iron	2.8 mg	20
Vitamin B1	0.23 mg	16
Folate	33 µg	16
Fibre	2.6 mg	14
Magnesium	31.5 mg	11
Calories	115.5 kcal	6
Fat	0.5 g	0.7

8 * Based on 2000 kilocalorie (kcal) controlled diet

9 Fried potato crisps are manufactured in more than 50 countries and are consumed extensively
 10 worldwide. The properties and quality of potato crisps have become a focus of interest for
 11 researchers ([Yee and Bussell, 2007](#)). One of the most significant features of processed potato is the
 12 colour of crisps, which plays an essential role in consumer acceptance of the product: crisps with
 13 light golden colour are considered to be of excellent quality, whereas brown or dark colours are not
 14 desirable because they are associated with burnt crisps. Processing companies are also concerned
 15 about acrylamide formation in crisps ([Matthäus and Haase, 2014](#)). This substance is a by-product of
 16 potato manufacturing processes and is a concern for human health due to its possible carcinogenic
 17 effect from dietary intake ([Scientific Committee on Food, 2002](#)). Its level in fried products is directly
 18 influenced by reducing sugars in potato tubers, which increase during cold storage ([Malone et al.,](#)
 19 [2006](#)).

1 There has long been an interest in refining potato characteristics to improve quality. Quality
2 attributes related to production include improving resistance to pests and pathogens, tolerance to
3 abiotic stress, enhancing nutritional value, and increasing longer-term storability ([de Haan and](#)
4 [Rodriguez, 2016](#)). Nevertheless, commercial potato varieties suffer from a limited gene pool, and its
5 expansion has been a subject of study for more than 50 years ([Barrell et al., 2013](#)). The conventional
6 breeding method that has been used to generate new cultivars is by hybridizing parental clones and
7 selecting superior individuals amongst large seedling populations ([Barrell et al., 2013](#)). However, the
8 process is time-consuming because potato is heterozygous and polyploid, and a cultivar must be
9 propagated vegetatively to maintain its unique trait combinations. The autotetraploidy of all
10 commercial potato varieties makes it more challenging to combine desirable alleles through
11 conventional hybridization. With emerging genetic technologies, it is becoming easier to directly
12 manipulate the potato genome and introduce desirable properties into this economically important
13 food crop.

14 **1.3 Improving potato properties through genetic engineering**

15 Potato is essential as a global food crop, yet conventional breeding of this heterozygous and
16 polyploid crop is still challenging. Developments in biotechnology are helping to boost the breeding
17 process and broaden the choices for generating elite potato characteristics. Many potato cultivars
18 respond well to tissue culture, making it a suitable subject for genetic engineering studies. The 844-
19 megabase genome of potato has been sequenced and assembled up to 86% from a homozygous
20 doubled-monoploid clone (*S. tuberosum* group Phureja DM1-3 516 R44) and a heterozygous diploid
21 breeding line (*S. tuberosum* group Tuberosum RH89-039-16) ([Potato Genome Sequencing et al.,](#)
22 [2011](#)). A few years later, nine monoploid and three doubled monoploid clones derived from native
23 potato landraces in South America were examined. The study focused on genome-wide structural
24 variation, gene copy number variation, which impacted 30.2% of the potato genome, and explained

1 its highly heterozygous nature ([Hardigan et al., 2016](#)). These databases provide a knowledge
2 platform and create more opportunities to modify the potato genome for elite traits.

3 **1.3.1 Micropropagation of potato**

4 The first *in vitro* culture of potato was done more than 60 years ago in 1951 by Stewart and Caplin
5 ([Vinterhater, 2008](#)), and there have been numerous related studies done since then.

6 Micropropagation involves multiplying nodal cuttings of surface-sterilized explants on standard
7 culture media and regenerating whole plantlets from an explant. New shoots can proliferate from
8 axillary buds on a stem segment. The process is used routinely for clonal propagation of virus-free
9 potato material, maintaining genetic stocks and international transport of pathogen-free
10 germplasm. Similar processes are used to generate transgenic potato plants. Although *in vitro*
11 culture of potato has been studied for more than half a century, shoot regeneration from callus can
12 still be problematic. Attention has moved towards direct shoot regeneration from explants, thus
13 reducing or skipping a callus stage, and this can also help reduce tissue culture-induced somaclonal
14 variation in regenerants ([Vinterhater, 2008](#)).

15 Different parts of potato plants, such as leaves, shoots and tubers, have been used as explants for
16 direct shoot regeneration. Leaf explants are more likely to regenerate shoots with less chance of
17 forming aneuploid plants compared to explants from tubers ([Wheeler et al., 1985](#)). Leaves also
18 serve as a good source from which protoplasts can be isolated, while internodal segments are most
19 responsive and offer a high regeneration rate ([Millam, 2007](#)). Media for potato micropropagation
20 are highly cultivar dependent. In a study done by [Shepard and Totten \(1977\)](#), up to five different
21 media were used in different stages of the culture process: protoplast isolation, protoplast
22 cultivation, callus induction, shoot morphogenesis and root initiation. Most studies employ MS
23 medium ([Murashige and Skoog, 1962](#)) as a base culture medium. Benzyladenine (BA) and
24 naphthaleneacetic acid (NAA) are commonly used for shoot induction, gibberellic acid (GA₃) is added
25 to promote the differentiation process ([Peng et al., 2008](#), [Webb et al., 1983](#), [Wheeler et al., 1985](#)).

1 Potato protoplasts have been isolated and studied since the 1970s. The culture of potato protoplasts
2 has been considered a promising approach to addressing some problems associated with traditional
3 breeding methods. The temporary absence of a cell wall makes protoplasts amenable for generating
4 interspecies and intraspecies hybrids. However, protoplast culture is likely to induce somaclonal
5 variation, which reduces the number of plants with normal phenotypes and desirable traits ([Jones et](#)
6 [al., 1983](#), [Fossi et al., 2019](#)). Besides, plant regeneration from protoplasts is also highly genotype-
7 dependent, and thus there is a need to develop and optimise tissue culture and regeneration
8 protocols for each potato genotype ([Vinterhater, 2008](#)).

9 **1.3.2 Genetic modification**

10 Potato was one of the first crops to be genetically transformed ([Barrell et al., 2013](#)): the initial
11 attempts were made more than thirty years ago by infecting potato stems with *Agrobacterium*
12 *rhizogenes* ([Ooms et al., 1986](#)). Since then, transformation technologies have been applied to this
13 crop to develop resistance to viruses, insects, fungi, nematodes, and tolerance to herbicides and
14 drought, and to improve its nutritional properties ([Millam, 2004](#)). *Agrobacterium*-mediated
15 transformation is the preferred approach for genetically modifying potato, and transgenic potato
16 plants have been regenerated in many different laboratories. The *nptII* gene conferring resistance to
17 the antibiotic kanamycin has been the favoured selectable marker because it is highly effective and
18 often leads to the recovery of many transformed plants. On the other hand, marker-free
19 transformation approaches have also been applied to potato, in which transformed plants have
20 been regenerated without antibiotic selection and transgenic events identified by PCR screening.
21 However, this approach results in a very low recovery frequency and may result in chimeric plants
22 among transformation events ([Barrell et al., 2013](#)).

23 Transformation of potato has also been achieved by direct DNA uptake by protoplasts through
24 electroporation or in the presence of polyethylene glycol (PEG). Heat shock at 45°C for 5 min was
25 first used in the transformation process, but soon it was detrimental to survival and decreased

1 protoplasts division ([Fehér et al., 1991](#)). PEG is added in the process to promote DNA uptake, with
2 25% and 40% are the commonly used concentrations ([Clasen et al., 2016](#), [Craig et al., 2005](#), [Fehér et
3 al., 1991](#)). Selection agents such as kanamycin and hygromycin have also been used to screen and
4 select transformants ([Fehér et al., 1991](#), [Craig et al., 2005](#)).

5 Cold storage and processing traits are areas of research focus for potato, aiming to reduce the dark
6 appearance of crisps and the synthesis of high acrylamide levels on frying. Studies in this area have
7 focused on solving these problems, mainly by genetic engineering, and more recently, using gene
8 editing. Although commercial growth of genetically modified (GM) plants is highly regulated, food
9 products derived from transgenic Innate potato (developed by the Simplot company) have been
10 accepted in eight countries, including Australia ([ISAAA, 2020](#)). Food Standards Australia New
11 Zealand (FSANZ) has also granted permits for food derived from several GM potato lines since 2001,
12 including potato lines that are resistant to potato leaf roll virus, potato virus Y or have reduced
13 browning and polyphenol oxidase ([FSANZ, 2019](#)).

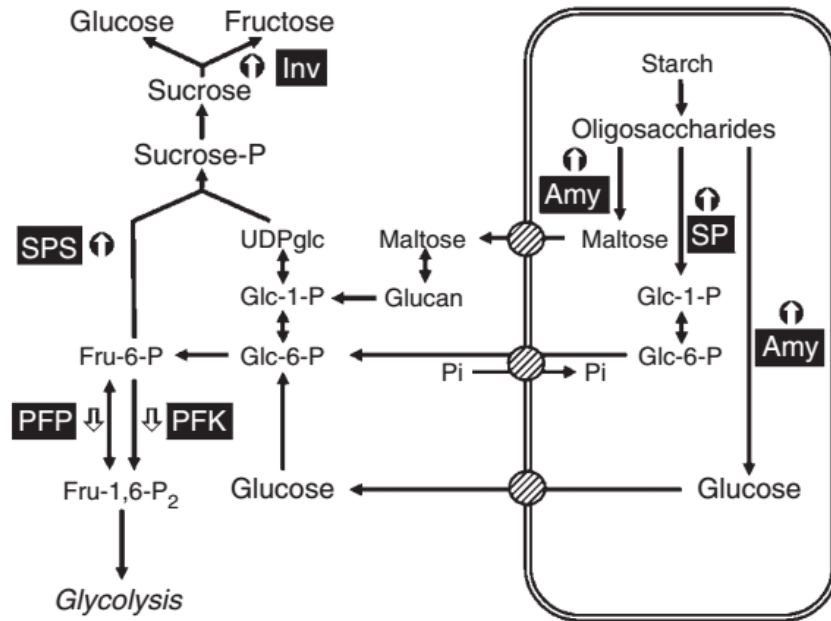
14 **1.3.2.1 Cold-induced sweetening (CIS) in potato tubers**

15 In most potato cultivation regions, harvesting is only done once a year, and harvested tubers are
16 stored with a tuber shelf-life of about six months. In such cases, it is essential to use cold storage to
17 reduce sprouting, shrinkage, and disease loss of stored tubers. However, cold storage triggers the
18 accumulation of glucose and fructose (hexose or reducing sugars), known as cold-induced
19 sweetening (CIS). This phenomenon was first described in 1882 by Miller-Thurgau, and it was found
20 that the level of accumulated reducing sugars in tubers is cultivar dependent ([Sowokinos, 2001](#)). CIS
21 develops rapidly, within two weeks when tubers are stored at 4°C ([Matsuura-Endo et al., 2006](#))

22 A carbohydrate metabolism pathway in potato tuber during cold storage was proposed by [Malone et
23 al. \(2006\)](#) (Figure 1-3). In the tuber, starch is degraded into maltose, glucose, glucose 1-phosphate
24 and glucose 6-phosphate, which are converted into sucrose in the cytosol. Acid invertase hydrolyses
25 a portion of this sucrose to glucose and fructose in the vacuole. On the other hand, glucose 6-

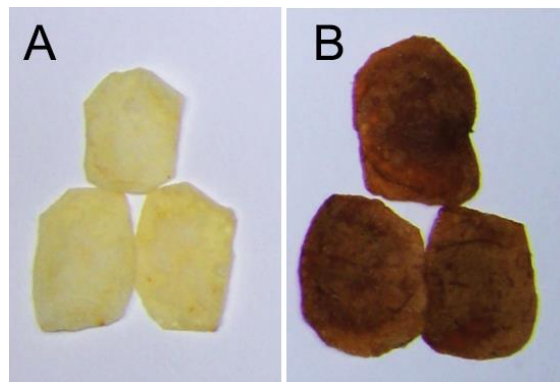
1 phosphate is also converted into fructose 6-phosphate and then into fructose 1,6-bisphosphate, and
2 this is an essential step of glycolysis. During cold storage, glycolysis is constrained because of the
3 conversion of fructose 6-phosphate (Fru-6-P) to fructose 1,6-bisphosphate (Fru-1,6-P₂) by
4 pyrophosphate: fructose 6-phosphate phosphotransferase (PFP) and phosphofructokinase (PFK)
5 enzymes are suppressed. PFP and PFK are cold-labile enzymes, and their activities are negatively
6 affected by cold treatments.

7 In contrast, other steps in the carbohydrate metabolism pathways are induced at low temperatures,
8 such as the conversion of fructose-6-P to sucrose-P by sucrose phosphate synthase (SPS) or the
9 breakdown of sucrose into fructose by invertase. Taken together, CIS occurs when starch is slowly
10 hydrolysed to glucose and fructose, and the glycolytic pathway in which sugar products are normally
11 metabolized is depressed, so the products of starch degradation are directed to the sucrose
12 synthesis pathway with the resultant accumulation of reducing sugars. When processed at high
13 temperature, reducing sugars in tubers create a dark colour associated with a bitter taste (Figure
14 1-4). The accumulation of reducing sugars is known to be significantly lower in tubers stored above
15 8°C ([Matsuura-Endo et al., 2006](#)). However, such temperatures favour sprouting of tubers, requiring
16 the application of sprout suppressing chemicals, which may leave undesirable residues and affect
17 food safety negatively ([Paul et al., 2016](#)).



1

2 **Figure 1-3. Proposed pathways of carbohydrate metabolism in potato tubers during cold storage** (Malone et al., 2006). Up arrow in black circles: the increased catalytic capacity of enzymes at low temperature. Down arrows: steps catalyzed by enzymes that are inhibited or inactivated at low temperatures. Inv: invertase, SPS: sucrose phosphate synthase, PFP: pyrophosphate: fructose 6-phosphate phosphotransferase, PFK: phosphofructokinase, Amy: amylase, SP: starch phosphorylate.



7

8 **Figure 1-4. Contrasting colours of potato crisps** (Wu et al., 2011). (A) standard-coloured crisps, (B) crisps produced from tubers cold-stored at 4°C for 30 days.

10 While the cold lability of PFP and PFK appears to be the main reason for CIS in tubers, it is not easy
 11 to manipulate these key enzymes without causing significant changes in potato carbohydrate
 12 metabolism, and so attention has shifted towards modifying other pathways. During cold storage at
 13 4°C, sucrose is rapidly converted into hexoses, and invertase levels also increase rapidly (Pressey and
 14 Shaw, 1966). These findings indicate a direct role of invertase in the accumulation of reducing
 15 sugars in tubers when stored at low temperatures. The *VInv* gene, a member of the invertase gene

1 family, is a vital enzyme in converting sucrose into hexose sugars ([Sowokinos, 2001](#)). One reason is
2 that invertases, and most of the reducing sugars generated during cold storage, are located in the
3 vacuole ([McKenzie et al., 2013](#)). A strong correlation between hexose: sucrose ratio and acid
4 invertase activity in cold-stored tubers from different cultivars has been established ([McKenzie et al.,
5 2013](#)). Significantly, VINV does not appear to play a crucial role in tuber development, making it an
6 ideal target for controlling the hexose content ([Bhaskar et al., 2010](#)).

7 There is evidence that silencing the *Vinv* gene does indeed appear to be a promising strategy to
8 prevent the accumulation of hexoses in tubers during cold storage ([Bhaskar et al., 2010](#), [Ye et al.,
9 2010](#), [Wu et al., 2011](#), [Wiberley-Bradford et al., 2014](#), [Zhu et al., 2014](#), [Clasen et al., 2016](#), [Zhu et al.,
10 2016](#)). Early studies were done using RNAi, which involves generating double-stranded RNA in
11 tubers in which the antisense component induces degradation of target gene mRNA. Such RNAi
12 lines exhibited a significant reduction of *Vinv* expression, up to 98 %, accompanied by a decrease in
13 fructose levels up to 50-fold compared to wildtype tubers ([Wu et al., 2011](#)). All cold-stored RNAi
14 tubers produced lighter colour crisps on processing compared to those from wildtype potato. Field
15 trials showed similar phenotypes and growth between wildtype and RNAi lines ([Bhaskar et al., 2010](#)).
16 The tuber performance of both wildtype and RNAi lines were investigated by [Wiberley-Bradford et
17 al. \(2014\)](#), who found a significant difference in invertase activities and hexoses content between
18 wildtype and transgenic tubers. The accumulation of hexoses in tubers of transgenic lines was
19 prevented after eight months in cold storage. [Clasen et al. \(2016\)](#) silenced the *Vinv* using a different
20 approach, transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs), to generate mutants in potato
21 after protoplast transfection. The results were comparable to those obtained using RNAi. Tubers
22 from these plants had undetectable hexose sugars, and crisps produced from these tubers also had
23 lighter colour than those of wildtype. The mutagenesis percentage was genotype-dependent and
24 depended on the TALEN construct; it varied from 2.1% to 15.9% when using three different TALENs
25 pairs for four different potato varieties ([Clasen et al., 2016](#)). Furthermore, this study demonstrated

1 that gene editing technology can facilitate full knockout of the target gene, which is difficult to
2 achieve using RNAi.

3 These studies indicated the potential of reducing the accumulation of hexose sugars by suppressing
4 the *Vlnv* gene without altering plant development and yield performance. Interestingly, the
5 acrylamide level in crisps derived from *Vlnv*-silenced tubers was reduced by 4 to 15-fold ([Bhaskar et](#)
6 [al., 2010](#), [Clasen et al., 2016](#), [Ye et al., 2010](#)). Nevertheless, the acrylamide content in fried potato is
7 also controlled by the AS1 activity, another endogenous enzyme in potato tubers.

8 **1.3.2.2 The acrylamide-forming potential in fried potato**

9 Acrylamide has been produced commercially for industrial uses, and its toxicological properties are
10 well established. However, its presence in processed food was only recognized in 2002 after a
11 Scientific Committee on Food meeting assessed the implications of a study by [Tareke et al. \(2000\)](#)
12 showing the association of acrylamide with “a considerable cancer risk”. Levels of acrylamide in
13 different foods and food products were studied, and it was reported that fried potato has up to 3500
14 µg/kg of acrylamide, higher than in biscuits and breakfast cereals ([SCF, 2002](#)). In contrast, no
15 acrylamide was detected in raw or boiled foods. Therefore, it was concluded that acrylamide is
16 formed mainly in carbohydrate-rich foods processed at high temperatures ([SCF, 2002](#)). The
17 mechanisms by which the acrylamide is formed following heat processing were unknown until
18 [Mottram et al. \(2002\)](#) found that acrylamide is a product of the Maillard reaction between reducing
19 sugars (hexose sugars) and free amino acids, such as asparagine which is abundant in potato and
20 cereals ([Mottram et al., 2002](#)).

21 Since the undesirable effects of acrylamide on human health were recognized, research has focused
22 on decreasing the level of this compound in foods. Acrylamide is viewed as a food-borne
23 contaminant generated by the Maillard reaction, and thus factors that influence this reaction are
24 considered keys for controlling acrylamide levels ([Matthäus and Haase, 2014](#)). The Maillard reaction
25 is influenced by factors such as temperature, pH of the food and content of precursors, such as

1 reducing sugars and asparagine ([Matthäus and Haase, 2014](#)). At first, it was proposed to reduce
2 acrylamide content in fried potato by changing the way it is prepared and processed ([Pedreschi et
3 al., 2006](#)). These methods involve immersion in an acidic solution, using different oil types and
4 changing the frying temperature ([Rydberg et al., 2003](#), [Pedreschi et al., 2006](#)). However, these
5 treatments were only partially effective, and they were difficult and costly to apply on a large scale
6 ([Rommens et al., 2008](#)). Therefore, potatoes that contain a low level of acrylamide precursors are
7 much preferred, but such varieties with high processing quality are not currently available. Given
8 the complexity of the potato genome, genetic manipulation was a faster way to generate varieties
9 with low acrylamide-forming potential. Targeting the acrylamide precursor, asparagine, was a
10 promising approach for controlling the potential for acrylamide formation. Asparagine is
11 synthesized from aspartate by *asparagine synthetase* (AS), and two cDNAs (*AS1* and *AS2*) were
12 identified from the potato variety Ranger Russet ([Rommens et al., 2008](#)). Silencing both genes using
13 RNAi resulted in decreased free asparagine in potato tubers by up to 95% with no adverse effect on
14 tuber yield or development of glasshouse-grown transgenic plants ([Chawla et al., 2012](#), [Rommens et
15 al., 2008](#)). However, in field trials, transgenic plants produced small and cracking tubers with
16 secondary growth ([Chawla et al., 2012](#)), suggesting that AS has an essential role in tubers, and low
17 AS levels may be associated with stress which leads to deformed tubers. By individually targeting
18 *AS1* and *AS2*, it was found that the physical changes in tubers were linked to down-regulation of *AS2*,
19 and *AS2*-silenced plants did not show a decrease in AS level. Silencing *AS1* alone was sufficient for
20 lowering acrylamide formation in tubers while maintaining the quality and yield of glasshouse-grown
21 tubers ([Chawla et al., 2012](#)). The *AS2* is closely related to the *Arabidopsis AS2* gene, with 86% of
22 identity, thus suggesting its role in ammonium metabolism ([Chawla et al., 2012](#), [Rommens et al.,
23 2008](#)). Further studies also indicated that *AS2* is mainly expressed in leaves and may be involved in
24 the detoxification of ammonium ions (NH₄⁺) in this part of the plant, and so silencing *AS2* had
25 negative impacts on plant growth ([Chawla et al., 2012](#)).

1 It is clear that reducing asparagine synthesis is necessary, but it does not always guarantee a low-
2 acrylamide product ([Rommens et al., 2008](#)). Factors other than asparagine control the formation of
3 acrylamide, and reducing sugars are the most important. Hence, the *AS1* genes could be silenced
4 together with those corresponding to cold-induced sweetening to achieve better results. This idea
5 was supported by a study by [Shepherd et al. \(2010\)](#) using trait segregation in a breeding population;
6 their data showed that low-acrylamide crisps were derived from tubers of plants that had both low
7 asparagine and reducing sugars. [Zhu et al. \(2016\)](#) generated transgenic Russet Burbank with three
8 genes *Vlnv*, *AS1*, and *AS2* silenced through RNAi. Fried potatoes derived from tubers of
9 *Vlnv/AS1/AS2*-triple silencing plants showed a reduction in acrylamide level when compared to
10 controls. All tested RNAi lines exhibited normal phenotypes with a similar yield to controls when
11 grown in the greenhouse. However, seed tubers from these plants developed into stunted and
12 chlorotic plants.

13 RNAi has been used in several studies to engineer the potato genome. This technique is effective
14 and considered specific, although it results in random integration of transgene(s), and off-target
15 activity has also been documented ([Jackson et al., 2003](#)). The potato genome can be modified more
16 precisely with the emerging gene-editing techniques such as TALENs and CRISPR/Cas9. An example
17 is the complete knockout of the *Vlnv* gene by transient expressing TALENs constructs in potato
18 protoplasts ([Clasen et al., 2016](#)).

19 **1.4 Gene editing**

20 Genome or gene editing is a new breeding technology with various applications in crop
21 improvement. This rapidly developing suite of technologies includes different methods employing
22 site-directed nucleases (SDNs) to create double-stranded breaks (DSBs) in the target gene sequence.
23 Once the DSBs occur, they may be repaired before genome replication, either via the non-
24 homologous end-joining (NHEJ) pathway or the homologous recombination (HR) pathway. NHEJ is
25 an error-prone process and can result in mutations at break sites from random insertion or deletion

1 (indel) of bases. If mutations occur in a coding sequence or the promoter region, gene function may
2 be disrupted ([Voytas, 2013](#)). The indel mutations can be a few edited nucleotides (nt) at one DSB or
3 up to hundreds of kilobase pair deletions between two DSB sites ([Hilscher et al., 2017](#)). For instance,
4 a large chromosomal deletion between two DSBs was achieved in rice, in which approximately 245
5 kb was removed ([Zhou et al., 2014](#)).

6 Gene editing started with the discovery of an intron-encoded protein, a meganuclease, in
7 *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, which was used to integrate an intron into a mitochondrial gene ([Jacquier](#)
8 [and Dujon, 1985](#)). Later, [Pavletich and Pabo \(1991\)](#) introduced the first engineered nuclease by
9 fusing a zinc finger DNA-binding protein to a bacterial restriction endonuclease *FokI*. Even though
10 this technique has been applied effectively in plants for creating mutagenesis, the target range for
11 zinc finger nucleases (ZFNs) is limited ([Voytas, 2013](#)). Furthermore, ZFNs must be designed and
12 constructed specially for each target site. This process is time-consuming and requires expertise in
13 molecular biology. There were limited approaches to the SDNs to create DSBs until the DNA-binding
14 specificity of transcription activator-like effectors of phytopathogenic bacteria of the genus
15 *Xanthomonas* was discovered ([Boch et al., 2009](#), [Moscou and Bogdanove, 2009](#)): its use became a
16 new way to manipulate target gene by fusing it with *FokI*, creating transcription activator-like
17 effector nucleases (TALENs). TALENs also function in pairs like ZFNs, but they do not require re-
18 engineering to construct TALENs arrays. The binding sites of TALENs must not start with a T base,
19 which limits the target range of this technique ([Gaj et al., 2013](#)). The most recent tool is the
20 CRISPR/Cas9 system, has proved to be an efficient and simpler alternative to ZFNs and TALENs for
21 generating precisely targeted genetic alterations.

22 **1.4.1 The CRISPR/Cas9 system**

23 CRISPR was first discovered in *Escherichia coli* (*E.coli*) by [Ishino et al. \(1987\)](#), but its function was only
24 understood and proved twenty years later by [Barrangou et al. \(2007\)](#). When adjacent to CRISPR-
25 associated (Cas) proteins, CRISPR forms an RNA-mediated adaptive defence system against invading

1 genetic material such as viral DNA or plasmids. The natural CRISPR/Cas system consists of three
 2 components: Cas protein, CRISPR RNA (crRNA) and transactivating CRISPR RNA (tracrRNA). When
 3 encountering foreign DNA, CRISPR is transcribed and processed into crRNAs which are
 4 approximately 40 nt in length. These crRNAs then combine with tracrRNA to activate and guide the
 5 Cas nuclease protein to make DSBs in the invading nucleic acid sequence ([Barrangou et al., 2007](#)).
 6 This defence strategy's specificity lies in the 20 nt upstream of the protospacer-adjacent motif (PAM)
 7 ([Bortesi and Fischer, 2015](#)).

8 The CRISPR/Cas system can be classified into two classes based on the number of proteins involved
 9 in the target degradation process ([Makarova et al., 2015](#)). Class 1 requires different multi-subunit
 10 crRNA-effector complexes, while class 2 only needs a single subunit crRNA-effector molecule. These
 11 two classes are further categorized into five types based on the genes encoding protein effectors:
 12 type I, type III and type IV belong to class 1; type II and type V belongs to class 2. Type II CRISPR is
 13 the most widely used system for gene editing because of its simplicity and ease of manipulating.
 14 Various type II systems which require different PAM sequences have also been discovered (Table
 15 1-2). Among these, CRISPR/Cas9 from *Streptococcus pyogenes* is the most popular system due to
 16 the relatively small size of the Cas9 protein with a short PAM sequence ([Bortesi and Fischer, 2015](#)).

17 **Table 1-2. Summary of different nucleases associated with the CRISPR system ([Nakade et al., 2017](#))**

Nuclease type	Enzyme name	WT/mutants	PAM	Protein size	Typical protospacer length	DNA end	Pros/Cons
Cas9	SpCas9	WT ⁵	5'-NGG-3'	1,368 a.a.	20 nt	blunt end	Most commonly used/Large protein size
		VQR ²⁵	5'-NGAN-3'				Different PAM specificities/Large protein size
		EQR ²⁵	5'-NGAG-3'				
	SaCas9	VRER ²⁵	5'-NGCG-3'	1,053 a.a.			Small protein size/Relatively strict PAM
		WT ¹⁵	5'-NNGRRT-3'				
	FnCas9	KKH ⁴¹	5'-NNNRRT-3'	1,629 a.a.			Less restrictive PAM/Large protein size, less application examples
		WT ⁴³	5'-NGG-3'				
NmCas9	RHA ⁴³	5'-YG-3'					
St1Cas9	WT ⁶⁹	5'-NNNNGATT-3'	1,082 a.a.	24 nt		Small protein size/Strict PAM	
BlatCas9	WT ⁷⁰	5'-NNAGAAW-3'	1,121 a.a.	20 nt		Small protein size/Strict PAM	
	WT ⁴²	5'-NNNNCNDD-3'	1,092 a.a.	21 nt		Less restrictive PAM, small protein size/Less application examples	
Cpf1	AsCpf1	WT ⁴⁴	5'-TTTN-3'	1,307 a.a.	23 nt	sticky end	Various unique characteristics (see main text)/Strict PAM
	LbCpf1	WT ⁴⁴	5'-TTTN-3'	1,228 a.a.			

18

1 The significant advance in using the CRISPR/Cas9 system was its modification by combining the
2 crRNA and tracrRNA to create a functional chimeric, single guide RNA (gRNA) molecule ([Jinek et al.,](#)
3 [2012](#)). Its specificity still depends on the 20-nt guide sequence, and 12 nt near the PAM are called
4 the seed sequence, which is crucial in the pairing between crRNA and the target DNA ([Bortesi and](#)
5 [Fischer, 2015](#)). The role of the seed sequence was demonstrated by [Zheng et al. \(2017\)](#), and
6 mismatches in this sequence are less likely to result in off-target effects. Compared to other gene-
7 editing techniques, CRISPR/Cas9 offers significant advantages and better opportunities for
8 specifically targeted mutations in plants. It is a much simpler system that still provides high
9 efficiency and versatility. Instead of requiring synthetic peptides with the DNA-binding domain, the
10 CRISPR/Cas9 system only needs a gRNA sequence to recognize a target sequence ([Bortesi and](#)
11 [Fischer, 2015](#)). Therefore this system can be reprogrammed easily, and its range of target sites is
12 nearly unlimited ([Shan et al., 2014](#)). Because targeting relies solely on the complementarity
13 between the guide RNA and target sequence, the CRISPR/Cas9 system can also be used for multiplex
14 gene editing ([Hilscher et al., 2017](#)). Besides, it is much easier to deliver the system into plant cells
15 because the gRNA sequence is shorter than the long ZFN or TALEN-encoding vectors ([Shan et al.,](#)
16 [2014](#)).

17 CRISPR-mediated targeted gene modification in plants was first successfully demonstrated in
18 Arabidopsis, tobacco, sorghum and rice by [Jiang et al. \(2013\)](#). The Cas9 coding sequence and the
19 gRNAs were assembled as plasmid DNA and delivered into plants via *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*,
20 particle bombardment or PEG-mediated protoplast transfection. This system has been applied
21 quickly to other plants, including wheat, maize, cotton, apple, citrus and potato ([Li et al., 2013](#), [Liang,](#)
22 [2013](#), [Xie and Yang, 2013](#), [Brooks et al., 2014](#), [Shan et al., 2014](#), [Butler et al., 2015](#), [Weeks, 2017](#)).

23 The integration of foreign DNA into the plant genome can result in insertional mutations and,
24 occasionally, plant mosaicism ([Svitashev et al., 2016](#)). There has been an increased focus on
25 research on DNA-free gene editing, in which there is no detectable transgene in gene-edited plants.

1 Transient expression of CRISPR/Cas9 has been shown to have the potential of producing transgene-
2 free mutants. A DNA construct containing a Cas9 coding sequence and gRNA expression cassette
3 can be coated on particles and bombarded into immature embryos ([Zhang et al., 2016a](#)). Although
4 mutants with no detectable transgene can be obtained via this method, there still be a possibility
5 that CRISPR/Cas9 DNA might be integrated into the plant genome. One way to remove an
6 integrated editing cassette is to self-cross edited plants and select those lines with the desired edit
7 but lack the expression cassette (null segregants).

8 Another approach is to deliver the CRISPR/Cas9 system as an RNP complex into protoplasts or cells.
9 RNPs were successfully transfected into protoplasts from Arabidopsis, tobacco, lettuce and rice with
10 mutation frequencies up to 46% in lettuce ([Woo et al., 2015](#)). No mosaicism or off-target mutations
11 were detected in gene-edited lettuces, and the mutations were inherited in the next generation.
12 Recently, the delivery of CRISPR/Cas9 RNP into potato protoplast was demonstrated by [Andersson et](#)
13 [al. \(2018\)](#). This study targeted gene coding for granule-bound starch synthase (GBSS). All mutated
14 lines were transgene-free, and a complete knockout of this gene was found in 2-3% of the
15 regenerated shoots. An additional consideration is that, by using a DNA-free approach to edit plant
16 genome, products from this process might be exempt from the regulations related to growth and
17 use of genetically modified plants because of the absence of introduced DNA in plants cells.

18 **1.4.2 Gene editing in potato with CRISPR/Cas9**

19 The first application of CRISPR/Cas9 on potato was made using *Agrobacterium* to transfer a
20 construct encoding Cas9 protein and gRNAs targeting the *acetolactate synthetase 1* gene in diploid
21 and tetraploid cultivars ([Butler et al., 2015](#)). Up to 15% of mutations were detected in diploid X914-
22 10 while 29% of transformed tetraploid Desiree carried mutations, with detected mutations ranged
23 from 1 bp insertion to 38 bp deletion. Since then, a few studies have explored the potential of this
24 technique to manipulate the potato genome (Table 1-3). The delivery methods were either via
25 *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation or protoplast transfection. The cultivar choices were not

1 diverse; Desiree and a few diploid varieties were mainly used. The targets ranged from herbicide
2 tolerance ([Butler et al., 2015](#), [Butler et al., 2016](#), [Nadakuduti et al., 2019a](#), [Veillet et al., 2019b](#)),
3 removing self-incompatibility ([Enciso-Rodriguez et al., 2019](#), [Ye et al., 2018](#)), virus resistance ([Zhan et
4 al., 2019](#)), altering tuber chemical composition and nutritional value ([Andersson et al., 2017](#),
5 [Andersson et al., 2018](#), [Nakayasu et al., 2018](#), [Yang and Xie, 2015](#)) to modifying plant pathways
6 ([Wang et al., 2015](#), [Zhou et al., 2017](#)).

7 Most of the putative transformed events from these studies involved a selection process using either
8 kanamycin or hygromycin. [Veillet et al. \(2019b\)](#) used both kanamycin and chlorsulfuron to screen
9 for transformed events. This work resulted in a 100% mutation efficiency of the selected lines. The
10 two-stage selection used in this study helped screen out all untransformed events, and all events
11 that were resistant to both kanamycin and chlorsulfuron carried mutations in the target gene,
12 *acetolactate synthase*, which can confer chlorsulfuron resistance. Apart from this study, mutation
13 rates of other research activities varied from 2% ([Andersson et al., 2018](#)) to 81.8% ([Zhou et al.,
14 2017](#)). Such differences in reported mutation rates result from differences in how mutation rates
15 were calculated in each report. The 2% reported by [Andersson et al. \(2018\)](#) was calculated as the
16 edited events that showed complete knockout of the target gene (and mutations in all alleles) by all
17 regenerated shoots. In contrast, the 81.8% frequency from [Zhou et al. \(2017\)](#) only indicated the
18 proportion of lines carrying mutations of total analysed lines, and not all alleles of the target gene
19 were mutated. Similarly, [Wang et al. \(2015\)](#) tested six transgenic potato plants expressing Cas9 and
20 found that five of them carried mutations, making the mutation rate 83.3%. In general, the
21 mutation rate was lower when using protoplast transfection as a delivery method for the
22 CRISPR/Cas9 system. This was highlighted in a study by [Tuncel et al. \(2019\)](#), in which a 6% mutation
23 rate was achieved using *Agrobacterium* -mediated plant transformation, while it was only 1.5%
24 when PEG-mediated protoplast transfection was used.

1 Multiallelic mutations appear to be a challenge, with limited successes reported. [Andersson et al.](#)
2 [\(2018\)](#) identified mutations in 9% of regenerated shoots, with only 2% of them carrying mutations in
3 all four alleles. Most of the mutagenesis reported in potato were heterozygous mutations with small
4 indels (ranging from 1 bp to 50 bp), but in rare cases, up to a 175 bp deletion or 236 bp insertion has
5 been found ([Andersson et al., 2017](#), [Kusano et al., 2018](#)). Attempts have been made to increase
6 Cas9-induced mutagenesis in potatoes, one of which used the endogenous potato *StU6* promoter in
7 the expression vector of CRISPR components. The percentage of edited alleles was increased nine-
8 fold (from 8% to 71%) by changing the *AtU6* promoter to the *StU6* promoter ([Johansen et al., 2019](#)).
9 Another strategy is integrating the translation enhancer, *dMac3*, directly upstream of the Cas9
10 expressing sequence ([Kusano et al., 2018](#)). This method improved the mutation rate 2.7 times
11 compared to a Cas9-expressing vector with no translation enhancer. The applications of
12 CRISPR/Cas9 to edit the potato genome is still in the early stages of development, with induced
13 mutagenesis varying among studies. Given the complexity of the potato genome and its well-known
14 impact of genotype in both transformation and regeneration process, application of the CRISPR/Cas9
15 system needs to be programmed and modified depending on target genes of chosen potato
16 varieties/genotypes.

Table 1-3. Application of CRISPR/Cas9 in potato. RNP: Cas9-gRNA ribonucleoprotein complex

Variety	Ploidy	Delivery method	Explant type	Target gene	Enzyme/ trait associated with the gene	Number of gRNA	Selection agents	Mutation rate	Reference
Desiree	4x	<i>A.tumefaciens</i>	leaves	<i>acetolactate synthase1 (StALS1)</i>	herbicide tolerance	2	hygromycin	5% to 60%	Butler et al. (2015)
X914-10	2x							3% to 55%	
double haploid	2s	<i>A.tumefaciens</i>	stem segments	<i>StIAA2</i>	Aux/IAA protein	1	kanamycin	83.3%	Wang et al. (2015)
double haploid	2x	protoplast transfection with a plasmid vector	protoplast	<i>asparagine synthetase 1 (StAS1)</i>	asparagine synthetase	2		3.6% and 4.6%	Yang and Xie (2015)
Desiree	4x	<i>A.tumefaciens</i>	leaves	<i>acetolactate synthase1 (StALS1)</i>	herbicide tolerance	1	kanamycin	12.5%	Butler et al. (2016)
X914-10	2x								
Kuras	4x	protoplast transfection with a plasmid vector	protoplasts	<i>granule-bound starch synthase (GBSS)</i>	granule-bound starch synthase	4		2.2% to 11.6%	Andersson et al. (2017)
Desiree	4x	<i>A.tumefaciens</i>	internodes	<i>StMYB44</i>	phosphate transport via roots	1	kanamycin	81.8%	Zhou et al. (2017)
Kuras	4x	protoplast transfection with RNPs	protoplasts	<i>granule-bound starch synthase (GBSS)</i>	granule-bound starch synthase	1		9% to 25%	Andersson et al. (2018)
Sayaka	4x	<i>A.tumefaciens</i>	internodes	<i>granule-bound starch synthase 1 (GBSS1)</i>	granule-bound starch synthase	3	hygromycin	7% to 79%	(Kusano et al., 2018)
Mayqueen	4x	<i>A.rhizogenes</i>	<i>in vitro</i> shoots	<i>St16DOX</i>	a steroid 16 α -hydroxylase	2 or 3		24%	Nakayasu et al. (2018)
<i>S.phureja</i> S15-65 clone	2x	<i>A.tumefaciens</i>	internodes	<i>Stylar ribonuclease gene (S-Rnase)</i>	self-incompatibility	1	kanamycin	5.2%	Ye et al. (2018)

Variety	Ploidy	Delivery method	Explant type	Target gene	Enzyme/ trait associated with the gene	Number of gRNA	Selection agents	Mutation rate	Reference
Desiree	4x	<i>A.tumefaciens</i>	stem and petiole	<i>acetolactate synthase (ALS)</i>	chlorsulfuron resistance	1	kanamycin and chlorsulfuron	100%	Veillet et al. (2019b)
Desiree	4x	<i>A.tumefaciens</i>	leaves	the genome of <i>potato virus Y</i>	virus resistant	1	kanamycin	not available	Zhan et al. (2019)
DMRH-S5 28-5	2x	protoplast transfection with a plasmid vector	protoplast	<i>acetolactate synthase1 (ALS1)</i> , <i>5-Enolpyruvylshikimate-3-phosphate synthase1 (EPSPS1)</i>	resistance to the imidazolinone group of herbicides and glyphosate	not available		11% to 47%	Nadakuduti et al. (2019a)
DRH-195 and DRH-310 F1	2x	<i>A.tumefaciens</i>	leaves	<i>Stylar ribonuclease gene (S-Rnase)</i>	self-incompatibility	2	hygromycin	not available	Enciso-Rodriguez et al. (2019)
Desiree	4x	protoplast transfection with a plasmid vector	protoplasts	<i>starch-branching enzyme</i>	starch-branching enzyme	2		60.8%	Johansen et al. (2019)
Wotan									
Desiree	4x	<i>A.tumefaciens</i>	stems	<i>starch-branching enzyme 1 and 2 (SBE1, SBE2)</i>	starch-branching enzymes	4 for <i>SBE1</i> and 6 for <i>SBE2</i>	kanamycin	6%	Tuncel et al. (2019)
		protoplast transfection with a plasmid vector	protoplasts					1.5%	

1 **1.5 Project aim and objectives**

2 The aim of this project was to develop healthier potato lines for human consumption with low
3 acrylamide-forming potential and low cold-induced sweetening. The strategy was to apply the
4 CRISPR/Cas9 system to alter the *Vlnv* and *AS 1* genes in potato. The project had five specific
5 objectives:

6 Objective 1: Optimisation of a micropropagation system for potato (*Solanum tuberosum L.*) cultivars
7 Atlantic and Desiree.

8 Objective 2: Identification of gRNAs targeting *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes and *in vitro* evaluation of gRNA
9 efficiency.

10 Objective 3: Delivery of the CRISPR/Cas9 system into plant cells via *Agrobacterium*-mediated plant
11 transformation and obtain modified plantlets.

12 Objective 4: Direct delivery of the CRISPR/Cas9 into plants via protoplast transfection or particle
13 bombardment for generating transgene-free gene-edited plants.

14 Objective 5: Biochemical analysis of potato tubers to assess their acrylamide-forming potential and
15 accumulation of hexose sugars after cold storage.

Chapter 2

Optimisation of tissue culture regeneration for the potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree

1 **2.1 Introduction**

2 The *in vitro* regeneration of potato has been studied and developed for various cultivars, and it is
3 well established that this process is strongly genotype dependent. Potato cultivars respond
4 differently to the same culture medium and growing conditions, with variation in the number of
5 shoots produced or in some cases, there may be no shoot formation ([Ghosh et al., 2014](#), [Webb et
6 al., 1983](#), [Wheeler et al., 1985](#)). An efficient *in vitro* regeneration protocol is indispensable to
7 facilitate plant research, especially for plant transformation.

8 Two potato cultivars, Atlantic and Desiree, were chosen as subjects for this study. Desiree has
9 yellow flesh with red skin and has been widely studied in laboratory conditions because it is highly
10 responsive to *in vitro* culture. Thus, it can be used as a model for developing new micropropagation
11 or transformation system. On the other hand, Atlantic is a standard chipping variety and has
12 creamy-white flesh with yellow skin ([Webb et al., 1978](#)). Desiree has been used in numerous studies
13 on micropropagation, microtuberisation and plant transformation of potato ([Wheeler et al., 1985](#),
14 [Butler et al., 2015](#), [Butler et al., 2016](#), [Zhou et al., 2017](#), [Veillet et al., 2019b](#), [Zhan et al., 2019](#)). In an
15 early study on shoot formation of potato explants, Desiree exhibited the best performance among
16 14 test varieties for tissue culture media response and shoot regeneration rate ([Wheeler et al.,
17 1985](#)). Desiree has also been used to study the effectiveness of gene delivery systems due to its high
18 transformation efficiency, such as in geminivirus-mediated transformation ([Butler et al., 2016](#)),
19 particle bombardment ([Veillet et al., 2019b](#)) or gene-editing abilities of CRISPR/Cas9 ([Butler et al.,
20 2015](#)) and CRISPR/Cas13a ([Zhan et al., 2019](#)).

21 In contrast, Atlantic has only been used in a limited number of studies with mixed results on
22 regeneration and transformation efficiency ([Peng et al., 2008](#), [Wu et al., 2011](#), [Han and Lee, 2015](#)).

23 In comparison with other potato cultivars, Atlantic often ranked the lowest in shoot induction and
24 transformation frequency. When Atlantic was transformed with an RNAi construct targeting the
25 *Vlnv* gene, it yielded about half of the transgenic lines produced by the varieties Snowden and

1 MegaChip ([Wu et al., 2011](#)). Atlantic was also reported to be more recalcitrant *in vitro* than cultivar
2 Jowon during the regeneration stage ([Han and Lee, 2015](#)). Its regeneration rate was 10.1%, and
3 transformation efficiency was 0.5%, much lower than 119% and 18.4% of Jowon ([Han and Lee,](#)
4 [2015](#)). Exceptionally, up to a 100% shoot induction rate has been reported for Atlantic ([Peng et al.,](#)
5 [2008](#)), but the reproducibility of this micropropagation system remains to be determined. However,
6 it is well established that potato micropropagation is highly genotype-dependent ([Webb et al., 1983,](#)
7 [Wheeler et al., 1985, Ghosh et al., 2014](#)), thus a more optimum *in vitro* shoot regeneration system
8 for Atlantic can still be developed.

9 Microtuberisation in cultured potato shoots has been developed for a wide range of cultivars. The
10 production of microtubers helps facilitate tuber analysis in laboratory conditions without the
11 requirement of glasshouse or field experiments and shortens the time needed to obtain potato
12 tubers. Microtubers can be induced under aseptic conditions and have similar morphology to tubers
13 produced in the field ([Barker, 1953, Estrada et al., 1986](#)). However, the induction of microtubers is
14 also partly genotype-dependent ([Gopal et al., 1998](#)) and requires optimisation when working with
15 new cultivars.

16 The aim of the work in this chapter was to establish efficient protocols for micropropagation of
17 potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree. Established media systems from previous studies were tested
18 for shoot regeneration from leaf explants and microtuberisation of both cultivars. The effect of
19 different combinations of 6-benzylaminopurine (BAP), NAA and gibberellic acid (GA₃) in shooting
20 media was also assessed to improve shoot induction of Atlantic.

21 **2.2 Methodology**

22 **2.2.1 Preparation of media for *in vitro* culture of potato explants**

23 Murashige & Skoog Basal Medium (MS medium, Cat. No. M5519, Sigma – Aldrich, Inc.) was used as a
24 basal nutrient medium. It was prepared by dissolving 4.4 g of MS in 800 mL of distilled water, with

1 the addition of sucrose or glucose depending on different treatments, and the volume was adjusted
2 to one litre with distilled water. The pH was adjusted to 5.6 with 1 M KOH, and 2.8 g/L Gelrite
3 (Sigma-Aldrich, Inc) was added to the medium prior to sterilisation by autoclaving at 121°C for 16
4 min. The medium was cooled to about 60°C before adding plant growth regulators (PGRs) or
5 antibiotics. Murashige & Skoog Modified Basal Medium with Gamborg Vitamins (MSGV) (Phytotech
6 Labs) was used as the basal medium in shoot induction experiments for Atlantic. This medium was
7 prepared as for MS medium. All PGRs and antibiotics were prepared as stock solutions, filter-
8 sterilised through 0.22 µm sterile filter units (Merck) and added to media.

9 **2.2.2 Regeneration of potato plants from leaf explants**

10 Potato shoot cultures of Atlantic and Desiree were maintained *in vitro* by subculturing nodal
11 explants every four to six weeks on MS medium with 20 g/L sucrose (MS20 medium) and 2.8 g/L
12 Gelrite in 250-mL clear plastic sterile containers with screw caps (Labserv). All cultures were kept in
13 a growth room under a 16 h light/8 h dark photoperiod at 22°C. In the first experiment, different
14 PGR combinations and carbohydrate sources (sucrose and glucose) from previously published
15 studies were tested for shoot regeneration (Table 2-1). *In vitro* leaves from four-week-old plantlets
16 were cut into squares (1 x 1 cm) and embedded with the abaxial surface in direct contact with the
17 culture medium. A total of 40 to 48 explants were divided into three replicates for each treatment.
18 Treatments included direct shoot regeneration (T1 and T2) in which explants were sub-cultured bi-
19 weekly on the same type of medium and two-step regeneration (T3, T4, T5 and T6) in which explants
20 were cultured on callus induction medium first and then transferred to shoot induction medium. In
21 treatment T3, explants were kept on the callus induction medium for two weeks before transferring
22 to the shoot induction medium ([Peng et al., 2008](#)). The callus induction phase in the treatments T4,
23 T5 and T6 was one week, and then explants were transferred to shooting media ([Kumlay and Ercisli,](#)
24 [2015](#), [Banerjee et al., 2006](#), [Nadakuduti et al., 2019b](#)). The treatment T6 involved two shooting
25 media: explants were cultured for two weeks on SIM1 medium (Table 2-1) and then moved to SIM2

1 medium (Table 2-1). The treatment T7 was based on the shoot regeneration protocol developed for
2 Atlantic by [Han and Lee \(2015\)](#), using four media types (M1 to M4). Explants were cultured in liquid
3 M1 (NH_4NO_3 and CaCl_2 were added to the medium before autoclaving) for one day, followed by
4 culture on solid medium M2 for two days, four weeks on M3 and finally to M4 until shoot
5 regeneration.

Table 2-1. Media composition for shoot regeneration from leaf explants of potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree. DSR: direct shoot regeneration media, CIM: callus induction media, SIM: shoot induction media. NAA: 1-naphthaleneacetic acid, BAP: 6-benzylaminopurine, GA₃: gibberellic acid, ZR: trans-zeatin-riboside, 2,4-D: 2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid. Murashige & Skoog Basal Medium (MS medium) (Sigma – Aldrich, Inc.) was used as a basal nutrient medium. Media were adjusted to pH 5.6 with 1M KOH. Gelrite (Sigma-Aldrich, Inc) was used as the gelling agent.

Treatment	Glucose (g/L)	Sucrose (g/L)	NAA (mg/L)	BAP (mg/L)	GA ₃ (mg/L)	ZR (mg/L)	2,4-D (mg/L)	NH ₄ NO ₃ (mg/L)	CaCl ₂ (mg/L)	Thiamine -HCl (mg/L)	Gelrite (g/L)	Type	Reference
T1	-	20	0.02	3.0	10	-	-	-	-	-	2.8	DSR	-
T2	-	30	2.5	2.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.8	DSR	Yasmin et al. (2003)
T3	-	30	0.3	2.5	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.8	CIM	Peng et al. (2008)
	-	30	0.1	3.0	5.0	-	-	-	-	-	2.8	SIM	
T4	-	30	2.0	3.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.8	CIM	Kumlay and Ercisli (2015)
	-	30	-	2.0	0.25	-	-	-	-	-	2.8	SIM	
T5	16	-	5.0	0.1	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.8	CIM	Banerjee et al. (2006)
	16	-	0.02	-	0.15	2.2	-	-	-	-	2.8	SIM	
T6	-	30	-	-	-	0.8	2.0	-	-	0.9	2.8	CIM	Nadakuduti et al. (2019b)
	-	30	-	-	4.0	0.8	-	-	-	0.9	2.8	SIM1	
	-	30	-	-	2.0	0.8	-	-	-	0.9	2.8	SIM2	
T7	-	30	10.0	10.0	-	-	-	147	80	-	-	M1	Han and Lee (2015)
	-	30	-	-	-	-	2.0	-	-	-	2.8	M2	
	-	30	0.01	-	0.1	2.0	-	-	-	-	2.8	M3	
	16	-	0.02	-	0.15	-	-	-	-	-	2.8	M4	

1 The second experiment was set up to improve the shoot induction rate of Atlantic using a two-step
 2 regeneration process. First, leaves were detached from 4- to 6-week-old *in vitro* plantlets, and leaf
 3 discs (0.7 cm) were made using a cork borer. For each treatment, explants were cultured for five
 4 days on MSGV supplemented with 16 g/L glucose, 5 mg/L NAA and 2 mg/L or 0.1 mg/L BAP, pH 5.6
 5 before transferring to eight different shoot induction media with varying concentrations of BAP (2
 6 mg/L to 8 mg/L) with or without 0.1 mg/L NAA supplemented with 5 mg/L of GA₃ and 16 g/L glucose,
 7 pH 5.6 (Table 2-2). Explants were sub-cultured weekly, and the number of induced shoots was
 8 recorded after four and eight weeks on shoot induction media. Experiments were replicated three
 9 times with a total of 42 explants for each treatment.

10 **Table 2-2. Media composition for *in vitro* shoot regeneration optimisation of potato cultivar**
Atlantic. Modified Murashige & Skoog Basal medium with Gamborg vitamins (Phytotech Labs) was
 used as a basal nutrient medium. Media were adjusted to pH 5.6 with 1M KOH. Gelrite (Sigma-
 Aldrich, Inc) was used as gelling agent at 2.8 g/L. Explants were cultured on callus induction media
 (16 g/L glucose, 5 mg/L NAA and 2 mg/L BAP, pH 5.6) for five days before transfer to the shoot
 11 induction treatments.

Treatment	Glucose (g/L)	NAA (mg/L)	BAP (mg/L)	GA ₃ (mg/L)
S1	16	-	2.0	5.0
S2	16	-	4.0	5.0
S3	16	-	6.0	5.0
S4	16	-	8.0	5.0
S5	16	0.1	2.0	5.0
S6	16	0.1	4.0	5.0
S7	16	0.1	6.0	5.0
S8	16	0.1	8.0	5.0

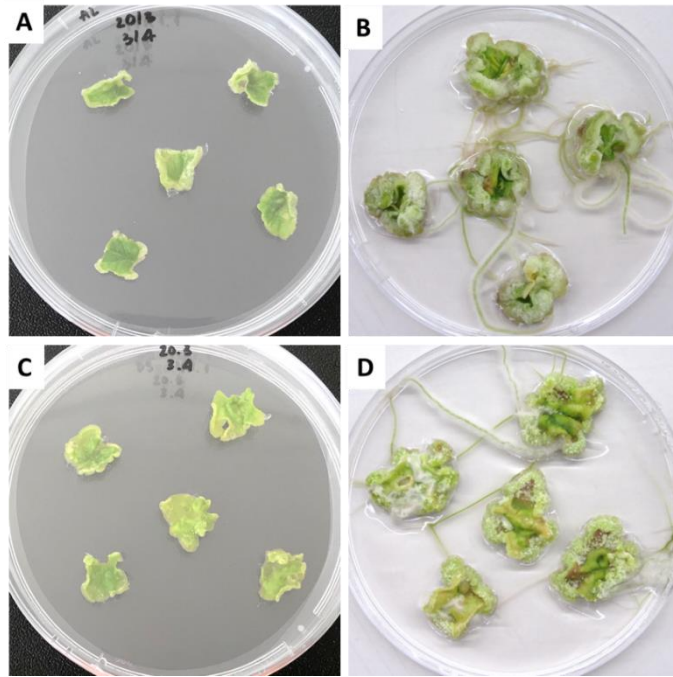
16 2.2.3 Induction of microtubers in culture

17 Multiple-nodal explants of Atlantic and Desiree were cultured on MS medium supplemented with 80
 18 g/L sucrose and 2.8 g/L Gelrite, pH 5.6 (MS80) to induce microtubers ([Gopal et al., 1998](#)). In
 19 addition, single-nodal explants of Atlantic were also cultured on MS20 medium for up to seven
 20 weeks without sub-culturing ([Han and Lee, 2015](#)). Twelve explants were used for each cultivar in
 21 each treatment. All cultures were kept under a 16 h photoperiod at 22°C. After 60 days of culture in
 22 16 hr light, Atlantic explants on MS80 were transferred to the dark until microtuber formation.

1 **2.3 Results**

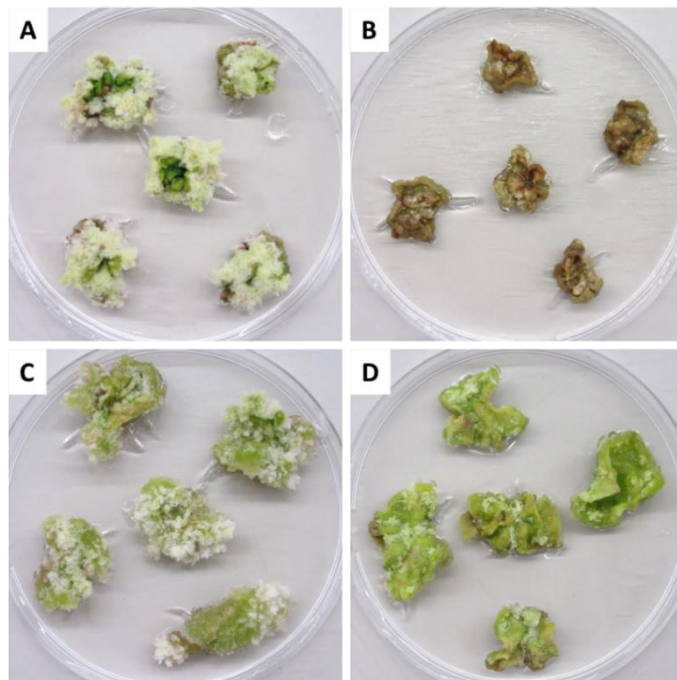
2 **2.3.1 Response of Atlantic and Desiree leaf explants to tissue culture regeneration**

3 In the first experiment, the treatments T1 to T5 were tested for both Atlantic and Desiree leaf
4 explants. Treatments T6 and T7 were tested only with Atlantic. Forty explants on treatment T1
5 (0.02 mg/L NAA, 3 mg/L BAP, 10 mg/L GA₃) did not show significant development after one week
6 and later displayed necrosis with no further differentiation until week three. All explants on
7 treatments T3 to T7 (45 explants each) thickened around the cut edges of leaves and exhibited callus
8 induction signs after one week. Similar signs were observed in the direct shoot regeneration
9 medium for treatment T2 (Figure 2-1 A and C). Callus continued to grow on leaves of both cultivars
10 on the direct shoot regeneration medium treatment T2, and roots developed after six weeks without
11 any shoot formation (Figure 2-1 B and D). After two weeks on shoot induction medium, treatment
12 T3, necrosis occurred on Desiree explants while Atlantic explants developed light green, friable calli
13 (Figure 2-2 A and 2B). These calli continued to increase in size for a further four weeks and
14 eventually turned brown. Explants on the treatment T4 expanded in size but had friable calli and
15 developed roots after two weeks on shooting medium (Figure 2-2 C and D). Their colour gradually
16 turned brown, and no further development was observed in the explants of both cultivars.



1

2 **Figure 2-1. Response of Atlantic and Desiree leaf explants on shoot induction treatment T2.** Treatment T2: MS medium with 30 g/L sucrose, 2.5 mg/L NAA, 3 mg/L BAP, pH 5.6. (A) and (B): Atlantic leaf explants after one and six weeks of culture, respectively. (C) and (D): Desiree leaf explants after one and six weeks of culture, respectively.



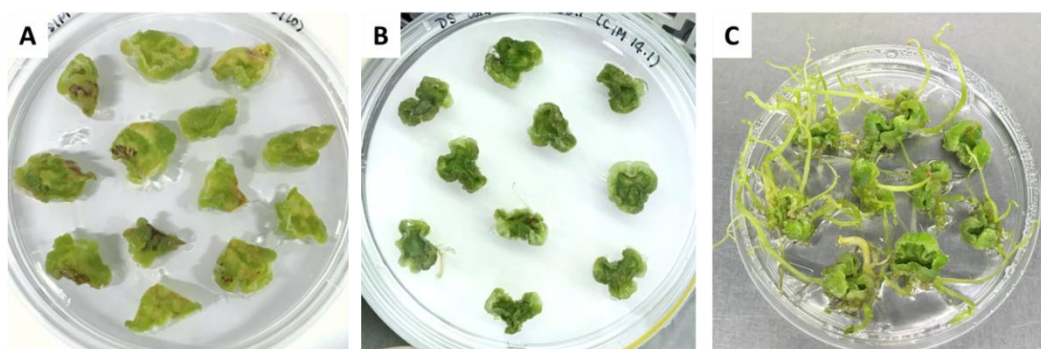
6

7 **Figure 2-2. Atlantic and Desiree leaf explants after two weeks on shoot induction medium of the treatments T3 and T4.** (A) and (B): Atlantic and Desiree explants on the treatment T3 (MS + 30 g/L sucrose + 0.1 mg/L NAA + 3.0 mg/L BAP + 5.0 mg/L GA₃, pH 5.6), respectively. (C) and (D): Atlantic and Desiree explants on the treatment T4 (MS + 30 g/L sucrose + 2.0 mg/L BAP + 0.25 mg/L GA₃, pH 5.6), respectively.

1 **Table 2-3. Shoot regeneration rate of Desiree and Atlantic leaf explants after eight weeks of**
 2 **culture on treatments T1 to T7.** Data are presented as mean \pm standard deviation. Desiree leaf
 3 explants were not tested on treatment T6 and T7. N/A: not applicable

Treatment	Desiree		Atlantic	
	Total explants	Percentage of shoot producing explant (%)	Total explants	Percentage of shoot producing explant (%)
T1	40	0.00 \pm 0.00	40	0.00 \pm 0.00
T2	40	0.00 \pm 0.00	40	0.00 \pm 1.00
T3	40	0.00 \pm 0.00	40	0.00 \pm 2.00
T4	40	0.00 \pm 0.00	40	0.00 \pm 3.00
T5	45	100.00 \pm 0.00	39	12.82 \pm 4.44
T6	N/A	N/A	40	27.08 \pm 9.08
T7	N/A	N/A	48	10.42 \pm 3.61

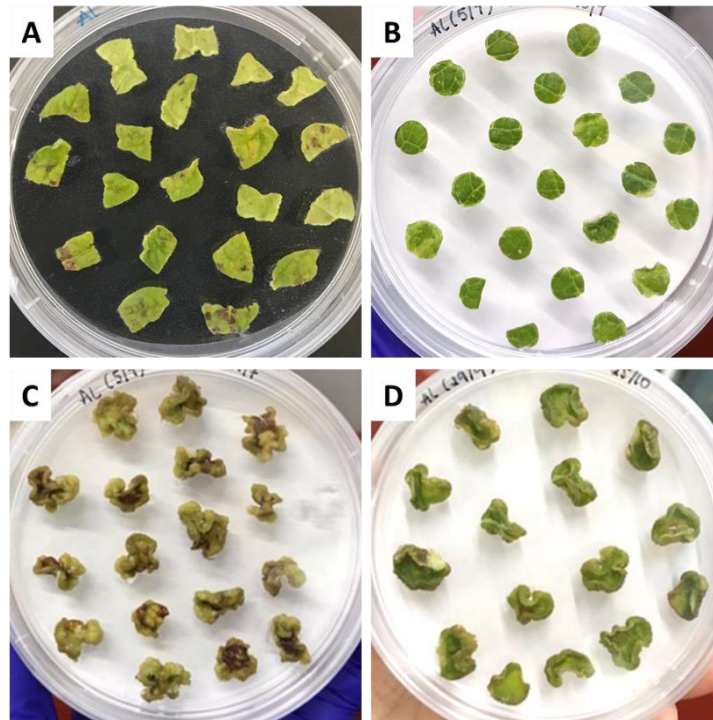
4 For the treatment T5, glucose was used instead of sucrose as the carbohydrate source, and ZR was
 5 the cytokinin instead of BAP (Table 2-1). It was found that both Atlantic and Desiree explants were
 6 greener and displayed better vigour on this treatment than those on T3 and T4 (Figure 2-2, Figure 2-
 7 3 A and B). During the first week of transfer on shooting medium, shoot initiation was observed for
 8 Desiree and healthy shoots developed from all explants by the eighth week (Figure 2.3 C, Table 2-3).
 9 Atlantic shoots were also induced in this treatment, but only a 12.8% shoot regeneration rate was
 10 obtained after eight weeks of culture.



11 **Figure 2-3. Atlantic and Desiree leaf explants on shoot induction medium of the treatment T5.** Medium contains MS + 16 g/L glucose + 0.02 mg/L NAA, 0.15 mg/L GA₃ and 2.2 mg/L ZR, pH 5.6. **(A):** Atlantic leaf explants after four weeks of culture. **(B)** and **(C):** Desiree leaf explants after two and eight weeks of culture, respectively.

1 Because the treatment T5 resulted in the highest regeneration rate for Desiree, T6 and T7 were only
2 used for Atlantic. Treatment T6 induced shoots in 27.08% for 40 Atlantic leaf explants after eight
3 weeks (Table 2-3). A much lower shoot regeneration rate, 10.42%, was obtained from the treatment
4 T7, with only five out of 48 explants generated shoots (Table 2-3).

5 In the second experiment, MSGV was used as the basal medium for the regeneration of Atlantic leaf
6 explants. The explants exhibited better vigour on the MSGV medium than the MS medium (Figure 2-
7 4 A and B). The callus induction medium was the same as in treatment T5, which was supplemented
8 with 16 g/L glucose, 5 mg/L NAA and 0.1 mg/L BAP. After five days, explants thickened around their
9 edges without much callus induction. The amount of BAP in the callus induction medium was later
10 increased to 2 mg/L, which resulted in better callus formation after the same period. Also, explants
11 cultured on callus induction medium with 2 mg/L BAP had a healthier appearance with greener
12 colour than those on medium with 0.1 mg/L BAP (Figure 2-4 C and D). The treatment S3 is given as
13 an example in Figure 2.4, indicating the better performance of explants on medium with MSGV as
14 the basal medium and 2 mg/L BAP than MS as the basal medium and 0.1 mg/L BAP (Figure 2-4).



1

2

Figure 2-4. Atlantic leaf explants after five days on callus induction medium and after three weeks on shoot induction medium of the treatment S3. Medium treatment S3: modified MS medium with Gamborg vitamins (MSGV) + 6 mg/L BAP + 5 mg/L GA₃. **(A)**: explants after five days on MS medium + 5 mg/L NAA + 0.1 mg/L BAP. **(B)**: explants after five days on MSGV + 5 mg/L NAA + 0.1 mg/L BAP. **(C)**: explants were transferred from MSGV + 5 mg/L NAA + 0.1 mg/L BAP and cultured for three weeks on treatment S3. **(D)**: explants were transferred from MSGV + 5 mg/L NAA + 2 mg/L BAP and cultured for three weeks on treatment S3. All media were supplemented with 16 g/L glucose, pH 5.6.

10

Shoot induction was recorded for all treatments S1 to S8 (Table 2-2) after four weeks. After eight

11

weeks, more shoots regenerated in shooting medium without NAA (treatments S1 to S4), ranging

12

from 7.14% in S4 to 64.29% in S3, compared to media with 0.1 mg/L NAA, which gave only 4.76% (in

13

S5 and S6) to 28.57% (in S8) (Table 2-4). Interestingly, root formation occurred in all media with 0.1

14

mg/L NAA (treatments S5 to S8). An increasing trend in regeneration rate over time was observed

15

for most treatments (S1, S2, S3, S4, S7 and S8) from four to eight weeks of culture, except for

16

treatments S5 and S6 (Table 2-4). The treatment S3 induced the most shoots from leaf-derived calli

17

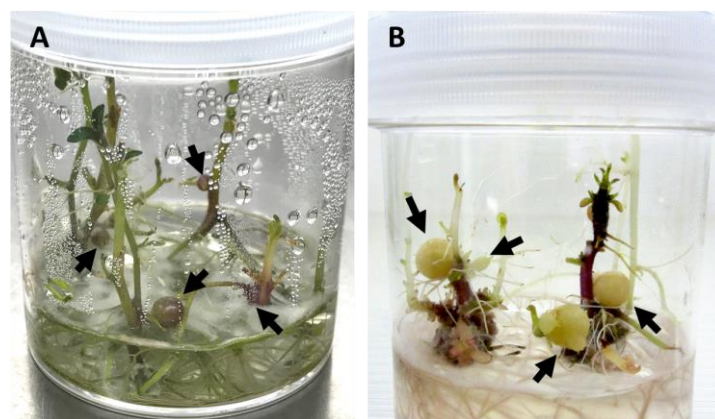
of Atlantic after eight weeks (64.29%) with an average of five shoots per explant (Table 2-4).

1 **Table 2-4. Shoot regeneration rate of Atlantic leaf explants after four and eight weeks on shoot**
 2 **induction medium for treatments S1 to S8.** Modified Murashige & Skoog Basal medium with
 3 Gamborg vitamins (Phytotech Labs) was used as a basal nutrient medium. Media were adjusted to
 4 pH 5.6 with 1M KOH. Gelrite (Sigma-Aldrich, Inc) was used as gelling agent at 2.8 g/L. Explants were
 5 cultured on callus induction medium (16 g/L glucose, 5 mg/L NAA and 2 mg/L BAP, pH 5.6) for five
 6 days before being transferred to shoot induction medium of each treatment. Data are presented as
 7 mean \pm standard deviation.

Treatment	Total explants	Shoot regeneration rate (%)		Average number of shoots per explant	
		4 weeks	8 weeks	4 weeks	8 weeks
S1	42	21.43 \pm 10.10	30.95 \pm 23.57	0.52 \pm 1.27	0.83 \pm 1.72
S2	42	9.52 \pm 13.47	19.05 \pm 26.94	0.12 \pm 0.40	0.57 \pm 1.45
S3	42	47.62 \pm 13.47	64.29 \pm 37.04	1.74 \pm 2.87	5.00 \pm 7.69
S4	42	4.76 \pm 6.73	7.14 \pm 3.37	0.05 \pm 0.22	0.10 \pm 0.37
S5	42	4.76 \pm 6.73	4.76 \pm 6.73	0.05 \pm 0.22	0.05 \pm 0.22
S6	42	4.76 \pm 6.73	4.76 \pm 6.73	0.05 \pm 0.22	0.05 \pm 0.22
S7	42	7.14 \pm 10.10	7.14 \pm 10.10	0.14 \pm 0.57	0.17 \pm 0.70
S8	42	26.19 \pm 30.30	28.57 \pm 33.67	0.69 \pm 1.66	1.17 \pm 2.30

8 2.3.2 Microtuber induction

9 Microtubers were produced successfully from all 12 multiple-nodal explants of each cultivar, Atlantic
 10 and Desiree, on MS80 medium. Desiree explants initiated microtuber formation after four weeks
 11 under a 16 h photoperiod. At least one microtuber formed on each explant and reached
 12 approximately 7 mm in diameter after six weeks in culture (Figure 2-5A). Atlantic explants did not
 13 show any sign of microtuberisation after 60 days of culture with a 16h light photoperiod. However,
 14 within one week of culture in the dark, white stolons developed and elongated, followed by the
 15 formation of microtubers. Atlantic microtuber size was approximately 10 mm after 30 days (Figure
 16 2-5B). No microtubers were formed on single-nodal explants of Atlantic after seven weeks on MS20
 17 medium without subculturing (Table 2-5).



1

2 **Figure 2-5. Microtuberisation of Desiree and Atlantic from multi-nodal explants on MS medium**
with 80 g/L sucrose. (A): microtubers initiated from multi-nodal explants of Desiree after four
 weeks of culture with 16h light/ 8h dark photoperiod at 22°C. **(B):** Microtubers developed from
 multi-nodal explants of Atlantic after 30-day culture in the dark. Explants were initially kept at 16h
 light/ 8h dark photoperiod at 22°C for 60 days before transferring to the dark. Black arrows point to
 the microtubers.

8 **Table 2-5. Microtuberisation of potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree from multiple-nodal explants**
 9 **under different culture conditions.** Modified Murashige & Skoog Basal medium with Gamborg
 10 vitamins (Phytotech Labs) was used as a basal nutrient medium. Media were supplemented with
 11 either 20 g/L sucrose (MS20) or 80 g/L sucrose (MS80) and adjusted to pH 5.6 with 1M KOH. Gelrite
 12 (Sigma-Aldrich, Inc) was used as gelling agent at 2.8 g/L.

Media	Total explants	Culture conditions	Variety	Percentage of explants produced microtubers
MS20	12	16 h photoperiod at 22°C	Atlantic	0%
MS80	12	For initial 60 days: 16 h photoperiod at 22°C For remaining period: continuous dark, 16 h photoperiod at 22°C	Atlantic	100%
MS80	12	16 h photoperiod at 22°C	Desiree	100%

13 2.4 Discussion

14 The results obtained in this chapter agree with previous findings that the regeneration process of
 15 potato is highly genotype-dependent ([Gopal et al., 1998](#), [Ghosh et al., 2014](#), [Webb et al., 1983](#),
 16 [Wheeler et al., 1985](#)). Optimum shoot regeneration and microtuberisation in Atlantic and Desiree
 17 were obtained by testing different media formulations and culture conditions. The use of different
 18 PGRs was shown to have varied effects on the differentiation and regeneration of plant tissues. In

1 addition, modifying the media components (such as adding vitamins) and the carbohydrate source in
2 the culture medium also impacted plant tissue vigour.

3 A combination of auxin and cytokinin is vital for the regeneration of shoots in plant tissue culture, as
4 their interaction governs cell differentiation and subsequent shoot initiation ([Schaller et al., 2015](#)). A
5 high concentration of auxin is required for callus induction, and it must be accompanied by an
6 optimal addition of cytokinin. The contribution of cytokinin in callus formation is believed to
7 promote the periclinal divisions after primordia are induced due to the effect of auxin ([Schaller et al.,
8 2015](#)). Furthermore, cytokinin acts as an auxin antagonist to inhibit root formation ([Schaller et al.,
9 2015](#)). The use of auxin and cytokinin alone has previously been reported to induce low or no callus
10 in potato variety Cardinal ([Yasmin et al., 2003](#)). However, combining NAA and BAP in callus
11 induction media raised the callus induction rate of Cardinal leaf explants to 95% ([Yasmin et al.,
12 2003](#)). Additionally, it appears that a moderate ratio of auxin to cytokinin is preferred for callus
13 formation rather than a high ratio of the two PGRs. In this study, leaf explants displayed better
14 vigour on callus induction medium with increased cytokinin (2 mg/L of BAP) than the one with a
15 lower level of cytokinin (0.1 mg/L BAP) given the same concentration of auxin (5 mg/L NAA, Figure 2-
16 4). Hence, the 2.5 times higher ratio of auxin (5 mg/L NAA) to cytokinin (2 mg/L BAP) was preferable
17 to the 50 times higher concentration of auxin (5 mg/L NAA) to cytokinin (0.1 mg/L BAP).

18 In the shoot induction stage, the auxin concentration in the medium must be limited as a continuous
19 supplement of high auxin tends to promote root growth ([Christianson and Warnick, 1983](#), [Webb et
20 al., 1983](#)). For example, the cultivar Superior produced roots when cultured on a direct shoot
21 regeneration medium with either NAA or IAA ([Dhital et al., 2011](#)). This root-formation effect of
22 auxin was observed in the direct regeneration medium of the T2 treatment with 2.5 mg/L NAA
23 resulting in explants forming roots without any sign of shoot induction after six weeks. Root
24 formation also occurred in the shoot induction medium of treatments S5 to S8, which contained only
25 0.1 mg/L NAA. The high level of NAA (5 mg/L) in the callus induction stage of these treatments S5 to

1 S8 may have accumulated in the cells and thus promoted root initiation in the presence of the same
2 auxin, even at low concentration, in shoot induction medium.

3 In the second experiment on leaf explant shoot regeneration, the changes in basal medium
4 components and the carbohydrate source positively affected the vitality of Atlantic explants. The
5 MS medium was replaced by MSGV containing the Gamborg vitamins, which improved the shoot
6 induction rate for this cultivar. The addition of Gamborg vitamins probably promoted cell growth
7 and division due to the high level of thiamine-HCl (10 mg/L), together with double the concentration
8 of nicotinic acid and pyridoxine HCl (1 mg/L each) compared to MS medium (0.5 mg/L nicotinic acid,
9 0.5 mg/L pyridoxine HCl and 0.1 mg/L thiamine-HCl) ([Gamborg et al., 1968](#)). A similar effect of
10 thiamine on regeneration was also found for the treatment T6, which had 0.9 mg/L thiamine-HCl in
11 the shooting medium resulting in a shoot induction rate of 32.5 % for Atlantic. Apart from Gamborg
12 vitamins, the replacement of sucrose by glucose also contributed to better shoot regeneration from
13 leaf explants, as seen in treatments T5 and S3. Sucrose is a common carbon source in plant tissue
14 culture media, and the use of sucrose at 20 g/L concentration is optimum for culturing both Atlantic
15 and Desiree nodal segments for plant micropropagation. Differences in the regeneration of plants *in*
16 *vitro* on using glucose or sucrose as the carbohydrate source have not been investigated thoroughly.
17 Sucrose, glucose and fructose have similar effects in culture on potato plant height, internode
18 length, number of nodes, number of leaves and plantlet fresh mass ([Rahman et al., 2010](#)). However,
19 how these sugars affect explant regeneration is still unexplored. In other plants, for example,
20 *Capsicum annum* and *Alnus crispa*, it has been speculated that glucose might support callus growth
21 and morphogenesis and promote better *in vitro* growth than sucrose ([George et al., 2008](#)), while in
22 common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris*), glucose is used faster than sucrose in tissue culture ([Wolff and](#)
23 [Price, 1960](#)). Glucose has been used as a substitute for sucrose in regeneration media resulting in an
24 improved regeneration rate (potato variety Atlantic), but no clear mechanism of how glucose
25 contributes to the plant regeneration process has been established. Additional experiments are

1 necessary to address the effect of glucose compared to sucrose as a carbon source for potato
2 explants for *in vitro* shoot regeneration.

3 Direct shoot regeneration was not achieved when leaf explants of Atlantic and Desiree were
4 cultured on media containing NAA and BAP (treatment T1) or NAA, BAP and GA₃ (treatment T2). The
5 combination of plant growth regulators used, and explant type was thus not ideal for direct
6 organogenesis. Switching BAP in the NAA-BAP-GA₃ combination to ZR can facilitate direct shoot
7 regeneration - ZR is believed to induce plant cell division, shorten the callus phase, and promote
8 shoot formation. It has been used in shoot production from leaf and internodal explants of different
9 potato cultivars such as Berolina, Russet Burbank, Bintje and Kaptah Vande ([De Block, 1988](#),
10 [Beaujean et al., 1998](#), [Anjum and Ali, 2004](#), [Banerjee et al., 2006](#), [Rezende et al., 2013](#), [Nadakuduti et](#)
11 [al., 2019b](#)). Previously, the potato cultivars Superior and Monalisa produced shoots (up to 75%
12 shoot induction rate) on media supplemented with NAA-GA₃-ZR combinations without going through
13 the callus induction stage ([Dhital et al., 2011](#), [Campos et al., 2016](#)). In this chapter, shoot induction
14 from Desiree leaf explants was obtained from a shooting medium containing the NAA-GA₃-ZR
15 combination in treatment T5. Another factor that influences direct shoot organogenesis could be
16 the explant type. Leaf and nodal segments are suitable as explants for direct shoot formation, but
17 their regeneration ability is cultivar dependent. For example, leaf explants were best for potato
18 cultivar Cardinal ([Yasmin et al., 2003](#)), while nodal explants worked better in cultivars Gui valley and
19 Bora valley ([Dhital et al., 2011](#)). Future experiments on direct shoot organogenesis of Desiree and
20 Atlantic can explore the effect of different plant growth hormones combination such as NAA-GA₃-ZR
21 or utilise the nodal segments as explants. Because the callus and shoot induction system had
22 successfully facilitated the highest regeneration rate in Desiree, and Atlantic also responded to the
23 process, direct shoot regeneration of these cultivars was not investigated further.

24 The induction of microtubers was achieved for Desiree and Atlantic under surprisingly different
25 culture conditions. Normal light at 16-h photoperiod was sufficient for microtuber formation in

1 Desiree, and this is similar to the cultivar Pentland Javelin ([Garner and Blake, 1989](#)). In contrast,
2 microtuberisation of Atlantic required culture in the dark after initial culture in light. Likewise, the
3 absence of light is a requirement for microtuberisation of some other potato cultivars, including
4 Kennebec, Russet Burbank and Shepody ([Seabrook et al., 2004](#)). Switching to dark culture after long-
5 term culture in 16-hrs photoperiod can trigger leaves to synthesise systemic signals to shift growth
6 from above to below-ground parts of the plant as a response to change in day-length, stimulating
7 the formation of stolons and tubers ([Jackson, 1999](#), [Ewing and Wareing, 1978](#), [Rodríguez-Falcón et](#)
8 [al., 2006](#)). This study confirmed that the interaction between genotype and culture conditions
9 influences the microtuberisation process ([Seabrook et al., 2004](#), [Garner and Blake, 1989](#), [Gopal et al.,](#)
10 [1998](#)).

11 Based on the results in this chapter, the callus and shoot induction medium in the treatment T5 was
12 optimum for regenerating leaf explants from potato cultivar Desiree. MSGV medium supplemented
13 with 16 g/L glucose, 5 mg/L NAA, 2 mg/L BAP, 2.8 g/L Gelrite, pH 5.6, and shoot induction media of
14 the treatment S3 were suitable for callus formation and shoot regeneration from leaf explants for
15 Atlantic. These media conditions were then used to induce shoot regeneration after *Agrobacterium*-
16 mediated transformation (Chapter 4) and particle bombardment of potato leaf tissues (Chapter 5).
17 Because the experiments in this chapter and the *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation in chapter
18 4 were undertaken simultaneously, the M1 to M4 medium in treatment T7 were used first for shoot
19 regeneration of Atlantic. With the results from this chapter, the regeneration media for this cultivar
20 were switched to MSGV with 5 mg/L NAA, 2 mg/L BAP for callus induction, and media of treatment
21 S3 for shoot induction.

Chapter 3

***In silico* identification and *in vitro* testing the efficiency of gRNAs to target Cas9 cleavage of the *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes**

1 **3.1 Introduction**

2 In the CRISPR/Cas9 system, gRNA is the vital component that defines the location and efficiency of
3 creating DSBs in target gene DNA. The specificity of gRNA is directly linked to the uniqueness of the
4 target site, which is 20 nt directly upstream of a PAM sequence. In a polyploid plant, like potato, it is
5 crucial to select target sites in conserved regions of the gene, so that gRNA can guide Cas9 to cleave
6 all alleles to achieve complete gene knockout if required. Cultivated potatoes are autotetraploid and
7 highly heterozygous. Their complex genomes are affected by structural genome variations such as
8 single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) and copy number variations ([Kyriakidou et al., 2020](#)). High
9 allelic variation in the *Vlnv* gene has been reported with an average of one SNP per 24 bp ([Draffehn
10 et al., 2010](#)). The allelic polymorphism must be identified before selecting target sites. Sequencing
11 PCR amplicons of the gene or its clones is the most common method to screen and identify DNA
12 variations in target genes.

13 Multiplexing gene editing can be achieved with the CRISPR/Cas9 system because it can be designed
14 to cleave two or more sites on a gene or different genes simultaneously ([Cong et al., 2013](#), [Li et al.,
15 2013](#), [Xie et al., 2015](#)). The effectiveness of the dual gRNA system in creating large deletions has
16 been shown in model and crop plants. Early work was reported by [Li et al. \(2013\)](#), in which two
17 targets were designed 24 bp apart on the *AtPDS3* (*Arabidopsis thaliana phytoene desaturase*) gene,
18 leading to a 48 bp deletion of the genomic segment in between, including a part of the target
19 sequence. The mutation frequency was 7.7% higher than the 5.6% frequency when only one gRNA
20 was used targeting the same gene. Dual gRNAs have also been used successfully to generate 247 bp
21 and 459 bp deletion in *WRKY20* and *VQ33* genes of *Arabidopsis*, respectively ([Pauwels et al., 2018](#)).
22 The ability to generate large chromosomal deletions of the CRISPR/Cas9 dual gRNA system was also
23 demonstrated in rice, with approximately 245 kb deleted from chromosome 2 ([Zhou et al., 2014](#)). In
24 tomato, 90 bp and 140 bp were deleted in the *slago7* (*Solanum lycopersicum argonaute 7*) gene with

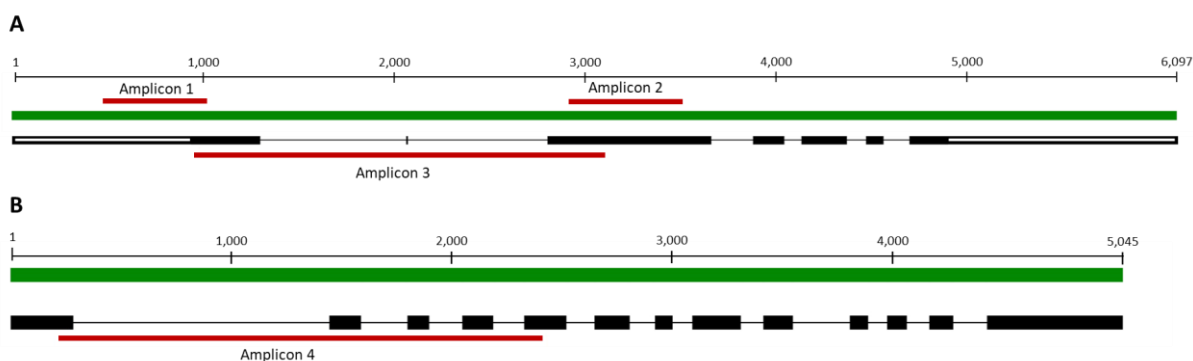
1 two gRNAs ([Brooks et al., 2014](#)), while in the *granule bound starch synthase I* (*GBSSI*) gene of potato,
2 two gRNAs targeting exon 1 and 2 resulted in a 135-bp deletion ([Veillet et al., 2019a](#)).

3 In this chapter, the *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes of potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree were amplified and
4 sequenced to provide data for *in silico* identification of target sites. Two gRNAs were selected for
5 each gene using the Cas-Designer web tool. The targets were in the form of 5'-N(8)S(12)NGG-3',
6 where N(8) is the eight nucleotides directly upstream of 12-nt seed sequence S(12), and NGG is the
7 PAM sequence for *Streptococcus pyogenes* Cas9. The uniqueness of the gRNA was assessed using a
8 nucleotide BLAST search against the nucleotide collection of *Solanum tuberosum* on NCBI (National
9 Centre for Biotechnology Information, USA) website (<https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov>) to avoid
10 potential off-targets. Selected gRNAs were synthesised *in vitro*, and their efficiency to create DSBs in
11 the target DNA was assessed *in vitro* with the Cas9 cleavage assay.

12 **3.2 Methodology**

13 **3.2.1 Identification of target gene sequences and primer design**

14 The complete coding sequence (cds) of the *Vlnv* gene was published by [Draffehn et al. \(2010\)](#)
15 (accession no. HQ110080.1). The full-length gene is 6,097 bp, including two untranslated regions
16 (UTRs) at the 5' and 3'-end, seven exons and six introns (Figure 3-1 A). The mRNA sequence of this
17 gene is also available on NCBI at accession no. NM_001288064.1. For the *AS1* gene, only its mRNA
18 sequence is available on the NCBI database, with accession no. XM_006343993.2. This mRNA
19 sequence was mentioned by [Zhu et al. \(2016\)](#) and [Rommens et al. \(2008\)](#), in which its cDNA clone
20 (GenBank: CK278037.1) was used to design primers to amplify the *AS1* gene. The NCBI information
21 indicates a predicted mRNA (5,045 bp in length) derived from a genomic sequence (accession no.
22 NW_006238977.1, region 1,560,303 to 1,565,347). An alignment between the mRNA
23 (XM_006343993.2) and DNA (NW_006238977.1) sequences reveals that the *AS1* gene has 13 exons
24 (Figure 3-1 B).



1
2 **Figure 3-1. Structures and primer flanking regions (A) *vacuolar invertase* and (B) *asparagine***
3 ***synthetase 1* genes.** Green lines represent the length of target genes; white boxes represent
untranslated regions; thick black lines represent exons; thin black lines represent introns; red lines
represent amplicons of corresponding primer pairs, cds: complete coding sequence. Amplicon 1 to
4: corresponding amplified products of primer pairs named VInv1-F & VInv1-R, VInv2-F & VInv2-R,
VInv3-F & VInv3-R and AS1-F & AS1-R.

8 Primers were designed using the Primer-BLAST tool (Ye et al., 2012) with default settings. The cds of
9 the *VInv* gene (accession no. HQ110080.1) was used to design two pairs of primers, VInv1 and VInv2,
10 amplifying the first and third exons, respectively. Another primer, VInv3, was designed to amplify
11 exon 1 to exon 3 of the *VInv* gene using the mRNA sequence (accession no. NM_001288064.1) as
12 reference. Similarly, the mRNA sequence of the *AS1* gene (accession no. XM_006343993.2) was
13 used for designing primers amplifying exon 1 to exon 5. All primer sequences and their expected
14 amplicon sizes are presented in Table 3-1.

15 **Table 3-1. Primers for *vacuolar invertase* and *asparagine synthetase 1* genes**

Target gene	Primer name	Primer sequence (5'-3')	Expected amplicon (bp)	Accession no. of the reference sequence
<i>vacuolar invertase</i>	VInv1-F	GGTTGGCAAGTTCGGGATAA	543	HQ110080.1
	VInv1-R	GATCCGGGAGGAATGTGTAATG		
	VInv2-F	CACTGGCTCTACTTGCCTTT	593	
	VInv2-R	GGGTTATCGGGTGTCCATTTAT		
	VInv3-F	CACGCAGTACCACTCAAGTTA	664	
	VInv3-R	CCAGTCTAGAAGGAGAGGATCA		
<i>asparagine synthetase 1</i>	AS1-F	GGCTTTGTTGGGTTGTTCCGG	530	XM_006343993.2
	AS1-R	TAGAGTACAAGTGCCCCGA		

1 3.2.2 Genomic DNA extraction and PCR amplification

2 Genomic DNA was extracted from leaves of *in vitro* plantlets of Atlantic and Desiree using the
3 hexadecyltrimethylammonium bromide (CTAB) method described by [Doyle \(1991\)](#) with minor
4 modifications. Briefly, CTAB buffer (2% CTAB, 1.4 M NaCl, 0.2% 2-mercaptoethanol, 20 mM EDTA,
5 100 mM Tris-HCl pH 8.0, 1% polyvinyl pyrrolidone) was pre-warmed in a water bath at 65°C. Leaf
6 tissue (approximately 1.5 cm in size) was collected from *in vitro* plantlets and cut into small pieces
7 (0.5 x 0.5 cm) before putting into a 1.5 mL centrifuge tube. The leaf pieces were ground into a fine
8 powder in liquid nitrogen using a plastic pestle, and 500 µL of warm CTAB buffer was added to the
9 tube. The tube was incubated at 65°C for 30 minutes with occasional mixing by inversion. After
10 incubation, 500 µL of chloroform: isoamyl alcohol (24:1) solution was added and mixed thoroughly
11 with the sample by pipetting. The mixture was centrifuged at 10,000 rpm (Microcentrifuge 5425,
12 Eppendorf) for 5 minutes at room temperature for phase separation, followed by transferring 200 µL
13 of supernatant to a new tube with 300 µL of ice-cold isopropanol. The solution was mixed gently by
14 inverting and then incubated at 4°C for 30 minutes. The nucleic acid pellet was collected by
15 centrifugation at 4°C, 5000 rpm for 5 minutes, and washed with 500 µL of 70 % ethanol. The pellet
16 was air-dried at room temperature for 15 minutes before resuspending in 100 µL of nuclease-free
17 water. The concentration and purity of the extracted DNA were measured with a
18 spectrophotometer (NanoDrop™ OneC Microvolume UV-Vis Spectrophotometer, Thermo
19 Scientific™). All DNA samples were stored at -80°C for future experiments.

20 Parts of the *VInv* gene were amplified from extracted DNA from Atlantic and Desiree using primers
21 VInv1, VInv2 and VInv3 (Table 3-1). All PCR reactions were done using the commercially available
22 PCR master mix (GoTaq® Green Master Mix, Promega Corporation, Table 3-2).

1 **Table 3-2. PCR reaction composition.**

Reagent	Volume	Final concentration
2X GoTaq Green Master Mix	12.5 μ L	1 X
Forward primer	1.25 μ L	0.5 μ M
Reverse primer	1.25 μ L	0.5 μ M
DNA template	1 μ L	100 ng
Nuclease-free water	10.5 μ L	
Total volume	25 μ L	

2 The PCR programs were set up in a thermal cycler (Applied Biosystems Veriti Thermal Cycler, Thermo
3 Fisher Scientific) with initial denaturation at 95°C for 5 minutes; followed by 30 cycles of 95°C for 30
4 s, 65°C (for primer VlnV1) or 55°C (for primer VlnV2) for 30 s, 72°C for 40 s; and with a final
5 extension at 72°C for 7 minutes. The results were analysed on a 1 % agarose gel (Agarose, Fisher
6 Biotech) in 1 X tris-acetate-EDTA (TAE) buffer alongside a 100 bp – 3000 bp DNA marker (100 bp
7 Ladder DNA marker, Axygen Biosciences). Gels were stained with SYBR Safe DNA Gel Stain (Thermo
8 Fisher Scientific). Gel electrophoresis was done in the same 1 x TAE buffer at 70 V for 70 minutes.
9 The gel was visualised using a UV transilluminator, and the amplified DNA bands were isolated and
10 cleaned up using the Wizard® SV Gel and PCR Clean-Up System (Promega Corporation) for
11 sequencing.

12 The Atlantic *Vlnv* gene fragment was also amplified with the Vlnv1 primer pair and high fidelity Taq
13 polymerase (Phusion® High-Fidelity DNA Polymerase, New England Biolabs-NEB). A 20- μ L PCR
14 reaction was set up with 4 μ L of 5X Phusion buffer, 0.4 μ L of 10mM dNTPs, 1 μ L of 10mM primer
15 each of Vlnv1-F and Vlnv1-R, 0.2 μ L of high-fidelity DNA polymerase (x units), 1 μ L of genomic DNA
16 (100 ng) and 12.4 μ L of nuclease-free water. The PCR program was set up at 98°C for 5 minutes;
17 followed by 30 cycles of 95°C (30 s), 55°C (30 s), 72°C (40 s); and a final extension at 72°C for 7
18 minutes. Gel electrophoresis and DNA clean-up were done as described in the previous paragraph.
19 The PCR product was A-tailed to facilitate TA cloning in a 10- μ L reaction of 5 μ L of 2X GoTaq Green
20 Master Mix (Promega Corporation), 0.2 μ L of 10mM dATP and 4.8 μ L of DNA cleaned-up from

1 agarose gel. The reaction was incubated for 30 minutes at 70°C in a thermal cycler and was cleaned
2 using the Wizard® SV Gel and PCR Clean-Up System.

3 **3.2.3 Plant RNA extraction and PCR amplification**

4 RNA was extracted from *in vitro* leaves of Atlantic and Desiree using the TRIzol method as described
5 by [Rio et al. \(2010\)](#) with minor modifications. Leaf material (approximately 1.5 cm in length) was cut
6 into small pieces (0.5 x 0.5 cm) and put in a 1.5 mL centrifuge tube. The sample was powdered in
7 liquid nitrogen with a plastic pestle, and 1 mL of TRIzol was added and mixed thoroughly by
8 vortexing, followed by incubation at room temperature for 10 minutes and the addition of 200 µL of
9 chloroform. The mixture was vigorously vortexed for 15 seconds and incubated at room
10 temperature for 3 minutes. The tube was then centrifuged at 13,000 rpm, 4°C for 15 minutes, and
11 the aqueous upper phase was transferred to a new tube. Then, 500 µL of ice-cold isopropanol was
12 added and mixed thoroughly with the sample by shaking, followed by overnight incubation at -80°C
13 to maximise the RNA precipitation. RNA was collected by centrifugation at 13,000 rpm for 10
14 minutes at 4°C. The supernatant was removed, and the pellet was washed by adding 1 mL of cold
15 freshly prepared 75% ethanol and centrifugation at 7,500 rpm for 5 minutes at 4°C. The liquid was
16 removed, and the pellet was air-dried at room temperature for 15 minutes before resuspension in
17 nuclease-free water. The RNA concentration was measured using a spectrophotometer, and the
18 sample was stored at -80°C for future experiments.

19 First-strand cDNA was synthesised from the extracted RNA using a reverse transcriptase enzyme
20 (GoScript™ Reverse Transcriptase, Promega Corporation). First, a mixture of 80 ng of RNA, 0.5 µg of
21 random primers and nuclease-free water to make up a volume of 5 µL was prepared on ice and
22 heated at 70°C for five minutes, followed by incubation on ice for five minutes. After that, the
23 mixture was added to 15 µL of reverse transcription mix (Table 3-3), mixed and incubated at 25°C for
24 five minutes, 42°C for one hour, and 70°C for 15 minutes. All the heating steps were done in a
25 thermal cycler.

1 **Table 3-3. Reaction composition for first-strand cDNA synthesis.**

Reagent	Volume	Final concentration/ Amount
For combining RNA and primer		
RNA sample	1 µL	80 ng
Random primer	1 µL	0.5 µg
Nuclease-free water	3 µL	
Total volume	5 µL	
Reverse transcription reaction mix		
5X reaction buffer	4 µL	1 X
MgCl ₂ (25 mM)	2.4 µL	3 mM
dNTP (40 mM)	1 µL	2 mM
Reverse transcriptase	1 µL	
Nuclease-free water	6.6 µL	
Total volume	15 µL	

2 The synthesised cDNA was tested to confirm the successful transcription with no genomic DNA
 3 contamination using primers StGAPDH-F (5'- GTTTGGTTGCTAGAGTTGCTCTG-3') and StGAPDH-R (5'-
 4 GTTGACACCCACAACAAACATGG-3'), which amplify *glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase*
 5 (*GAPDH*) (accession no. NW_006238953.1), a housekeeping gene. Leaf DNA was used as a positive
 6 control with the expected amplicon sizes 775 bp for DNA and 368 bp for cDNA. The cDNA was later
 7 amplified with AS1 primers (Table 3-1), and all PCR reactions were prepared as described in Table
 8 3-2. The PCR conditions were 95°C for 5 minutes, 30 cycles of 95°C for 30 s, 55°C for 30 s, 72°C for
 9 40 s and a final extension step at 72°C for 7 minutes. Gel electrophoresis and DNA
 10 fragment/amplicon clean-up for sequencing were done as described in section 3.2.2.

11 **3.2.4 Cloning of PCR products of VInv1 and VInv3 primers**

12 **3.2.4.1 Ligation and transformation**

13 The PCR products of VInv 1 and VInv3 primers were cloned into *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*) JM109
 14 competent cells using the pGEM®-T easy vector, following the manufacturer's instructions (Promega

1 Corporation). The DNA samples cleaned from the agarose gel were quantified with a
 2 spectrophotometer, and they were ligated into the pGEM®-T easy vector at the ratio of 5:1 (Table
 3 3-4). The amount of DNA insert for ligation was calculated according to the equation provided in the
 4 Promega technical manual:

$$5 \quad \frac{\text{ng of vector} \times \text{size of insert (kb)}}{\text{kb size of vector}} \times \text{insert: vector molar ratio} = \text{ng of insert}$$

6 **Table 3-4. Reagents of a ligation reaction**

Reagent	Amount	Final concentration	DNA size
2X Rapid ligation buffer	5 µL	1 X	
pGEM®-T easy vector	50 ng	50 ng	3015 bp
T4 DNA ligase	1 µL	3 Weiss units	
DNA insert	45 ng (PCR product of primer VInv1)		543 bp
	33.2 ng (PCR product of primer VInv3)		664 bp
Nuclease-free water	Makeup final volume to 10 µL		

7 The ligation reaction was incubated overnight at 4°C to maximise the number of transformants.
 8 After that, the vector containing insert was transformed into *E. coli* JM109 competent cells by adding
 9 2 µL of the ligation reaction in 25 µL of *E. coli* competent cells, which were left on ice until just
 10 thawed. The mixture was incubated on ice for 20 minutes, followed by heat shock at 42°C for 50 s
 11 and then immediately chilled on ice for 2 minutes. The cells were grown in 500 µL LB broth at 37°C
 12 in the dark on a rotary shaker at 225 rpm for 1.5 hrs and collected by centrifugation at 1,000 rpm
 13 (Microcentrifuge 5425, Eppendorf) for 10 minutes before being resuspended in 200 µL of LB broth.
 14 Then 100 µL of resuspended cells was plated on LB agar containing 100 mg/L ampicillin, 80 mg/L X-
 15 gal (5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indolyl-beta-D-galacto-pyranoside) and 0.5 mM of IPTG (isopropyl β-D-1-
 16 thiogalactopyranoside). The plate was incubated overnight in the dark at 37°C to facilitate bacterial
 17 colony growth.

1 **3.2.4.2 Colony PCR and extraction of DNA plasmid**

2 The transformants were screened for DNA insert using blue-white screening and colony PCR
3 methods. At least six white colonies were picked for each ligation and were resuspended separately
4 in 20 μ L of nuclease-free water, from which 5 μ L was used as the template in a PCR reaction with
5 M13-F (5'-GTAAAACGACGGCCAGTG-3') and M13-R (5'-CAGGAAACAGCTATGACCAT-3') primers (Table
6 3-2). The PCR program was set up on a thermal cycler, starting at 95°C for 5 minutes, followed by 30
7 cycles of 95°C for 30 s, 55°C for 30 s and 72°C for 40 s; ending with a final extension at 72°C for 7
8 minutes. The results were analysed on an agarose gel, as described in section 3.2.2. The PCR-
9 positive colonies were grown overnight in 5 mL of LB medium supplemented with 100 mg/L
10 ampicillin, in the dark at 37°C on a rotary shaker at 225 rpm. Plasmid DNA was extracted from 4.5
11 mL of the culture grown overnight using a commercial kit following the manufacturer's protocol
12 (QIAprep Spin Miniprep Kit, QIAGEN). Extracted DNA was quantified using a spectrophotometer.
13 The remaining 0.5 mL of the bacterial culture was used to make glycerol stock by mixing it with 0.5
14 mL of 50 % sterile glycerol and stored at -80°C for future use.

15 **3.2.5 Sequencing reactions**

16 The nucleotide sequences of the desired DNA fragments and plasmid DNAs were obtained from
17 Sanger sequencing using BigDye[®] Terminator v3.2 Cycle Sequencing Kit (Applied Biosystems). The
18 reaction was set up in a total volume of 10 μ L, including 1.75 μ L of 5X sequencing buffer, 0.5 μ L of
19 Dye terminator mixture, 3.2 pmol of forward or reverse primer, 20 ng of DNA template (for PCR
20 product from 500 bp to 1000 bp) or 250 ng of plasmid DNA (for plasmid less than 3 kb) and nuclease-
21 free water. The reverse primers were used in sequencing reactions for DNA fragments to include
22 sequencing of the 5'-end. The M13 forward primer was used for sequencing plasmid DNA after
23 cloning. The sequencing program was set up on a thermal cycler, starting at 96°C for 2 minutes, 25
24 cycles of 96°C for 10 s, 55°C for 5 s and 60°C for 4 minutes. The product was purified using the
25 ethanol/EDTA precipitation method described in BigDye[®] Terminator v3.1 Cycle Sequencing Kit

1 protocol (Applied Biosystems) with modifications. Briefly, the following reagents were added (in
2 order as mentioned) to the reaction after thermal cycling: 1 μ L of 125 mM EDTA, 1 μ L of 3 M sodium
3 acetate (pH 5.2) and 25 μ L of 100 % ethanol, after which the reaction was mixed thoroughly by
4 pipetting and incubated at room temperature for 20 minutes in the dark. The DNA pellets were
5 collected by centrifugation at maximum speed 21,330 $\times g$ (Microcentrifuge 5425, Eppendorf) for 30
6 minutes. The supernatant was discarded, and the pellets were washed with 125 μ L of freshly
7 prepared 70% ethanol, followed by centrifugation at 21,330 $\times g$ for 5 minutes. All the liquid was
8 removed, and the DNA was air-dried at room temperature, in the dark, for 15 minutes. Nucleotide
9 analyses using Sanger sequencing were performed at the Western Australian State Agricultural
10 Biotechnology Centre (SABC) sequencing facility at Murdoch University. The results were analysed
11 on Geneious Prime software (Biomatters) and aligned with the reference sequences for *Vlnv*
12 (accession no. HQ110080.1) and *AS1* (accession no. XM_006343993.2) genes from NCBI for
13 confirmation of the correct gene amplification and cloning. The conserved regions of the gene were
14 identified by aligning the different alleles cloned and later used for selecting gRNA target sites.
15 Multiple alignments of sequences were done using the Multalin web tool with standard settings
16 ([Corpet, 1988](#)).

17 **3.2.6 *In silico* identification of gRNA target sites for *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes**

18 The consensus sequences from the gene sequence alignments were used for identifying target sites
19 for CRISPR/Cas9 using a web-based tool named Cas-Designer ([http://www.rgenome.net/cas-](http://www.rgenome.net/cas-designer)
20 [designer](#)) ([Park et al., 2015](#)). All potential target sites containing a TTTT stretch were excluded to
21 avoid transcription termination by RNA polymerase III. The remaining sequences were filtered
22 based on their positions on the multiple sequence alignments of the target gene. Those located in
23 the conserved regions of target genes were searched against the nucleotide collection of *Solanum*
24 *tuberosum* on the NCBI website using nucleotide BLAST. Two guide RNA target sequences for which
25 the seed sequence S(12) had no potential off-targets which contained up to six mismatches in the

1 potato sequence database were chosen for each target gene. The first 20-nt sequence directly
 2 upstream PAM of each target site was used for assembling transcription template and construct of
 3 gRNA.

4 **3.2.7 *In vitro* Cas9 cleavage assay**

5 Two pairs of target sites, g67 and g10, g4 and g7, were selected for *VInv* and *AS1* genes. The
 6 efficiency of gRNAs was tested using the *in vitro* Cas9 cleavage assay. The transcription templates of
 7 gRNA were prepared by amplifying the gRNA construct ligated to a pGEM-T easy vector (referred to
 8 in section 4.3.1 of chapter 4) with the gRNA forward primer appended with T7 promoter sequence
 9 and reverse primer complementary to the 3' end of gRNA scaffold sequence (gRNA-R) (Table 3-5).
 10 The forward primers were designed to have the T7 promoter sequence ending with two Gs
 11 (guanines) before the guide sequences (Table 3-5), and the PCR was performed as described in
 12 section 3.2.2 of this chapter.

Table 3-5. Primers for assembling gRNA transcription templates. T7 promoters are in bold and guides are shaded in blue

Primer name	Corresponding gRNA	Sequence (5'-3')
T7g67	g67	AAGCTAATACGACTCACTATAG GATCAATGGTACGATATTAA
T7g10	g10	AAGCTAATACGACTCACTATAG GTCAAGTACAAAGGCAACC
T7g4	g4	AAGCTAATACGACTCACTATAG GAGTCTTGAGCTTTCTCGC
T7g7	g7	AAGCTAATACGACTCACTATAG GTGAAGCATCGTGGACCGGAT
gRNA-R		GCCAACTTTGTACAAGAAAGCTGG

15 The gRNAs were transcribed *in vitro* using T7 RNA polymerase (HiScribe™ Quick T7 High Yield RNA
 16 Synthesis Kit, NEB) following the manufacturer's protocol. Briefly, a 20 µL reaction was assembled
 17 by mixing 1.5 µL of 10X reaction buffer (0.75X final concentration) with 1.5 µL each of ATP, GTP, CTP,
 18 UTP (7.5 mM final concentration for each), 1.5 µL of T7 RNA polymerase mix and 1 µg of template
 19 DNA. The reaction was incubated at 37°C for 14 hrs in a thermal cycler. Template DNA was
 20 removed from the reaction by DNase treatment using TURBO DNase I (Invitrogen™) by adding 70 µL
 21 of nuclease-free water, 10 µL 10X TURBO DNase buffer, 1 µL of TURBO DNase I (Invitrogen™) to the

1 transcription reaction after incubation for 14 hrs, followed by incubation at 37°C for 30 min.
2 Synthesised gRNA was purified following the purification protocol of synthesised RNA by NEB (New
3 England Biolabs®). The reaction was adjusted to 180 µL by adding 79 µL of nuclease-free water
4 followed by the addition of 20 µL of 3M sodium acetate (pH 5.2) and 200 µL of chloroform. The
5 solution was mixed thoroughly and then centrifuged at 10,000 rpm (Microcentrifuge 5425,
6 Eppendorf) for 5 min at room temperature. The aqueous phase was transferred to a new 1.5 ml
7 tube, and two volumes of ice-cold 96% ethanol were added. The sample was incubated at -80°C
8 overnight to maximise the precipitation of gRNA. The gRNA was then collected by centrifugation at
9 5,000 rpm (Microcentrifuge 5425, Eppendorf) for 5 min at 4°C. The resulting pellet was rinsed with
10 500 µL ice-cold 70% ethanol, centrifuged at 5,000 rpm (Microcentrifuge 5425, Eppendorf) for 2 min
11 at 4°C. Ethanol was removed, and the pellet was air-dried before resuspending in nuclease-free
12 water. The gRNA was quantified using a spectrophotometer, denatured at 70°C for 5 min and
13 analysed on a 2 % agarose gel (70 V for 30 to 60 min).

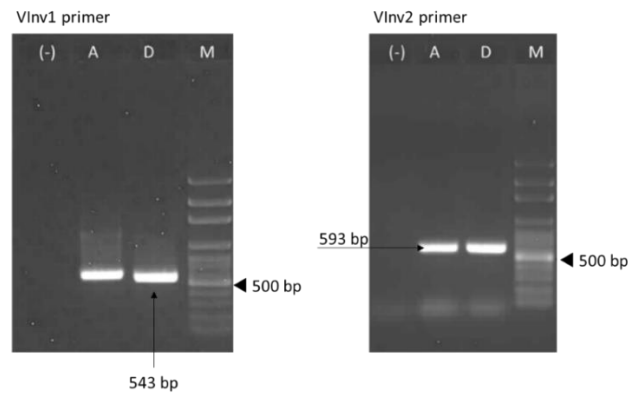
14 The Cas9 cleavage assay was initially performed *in vitro* at a mass ratio 2:2:1 of Cas9:gRNA:target
15 DNA by incubating in a 10 µL reaction containing 1 µg (0.0062 nM) of Cas9 protein (ProteoWA), 1 µg
16 (0.031 nM) of gRNA, 1X NEBuffer 3.1 and nuclease-free water for 10 min at room temperature.
17 After that, 10 µL of nuclease-free water, 1X NEBuffer 3.1 and 500 ng (0.0018 nM) target DNA (530
18 bp) was added, and the reaction was incubated at 37°C for 15 min. The cleavage assay was also
19 performed with 10:10:1 molar ratio of Cas9:gRNA:target DNA in a 10 µL reaction containing 0.01 nM
20 (1600 ng) of Cas9, 0.01 nM (322.09 ng) of gRNA and 1X NEBuffer 3.1, incubation at room
21 temperature for 10 min followed by addition of 10 µL of 0.001 nM (400 ng) target DNA (593 bp) and
22 1X NEBuffer 3.1. The reaction was again incubated at 37°C for 15 min. The amount of Cas9 protein
23 was calculated using the web tool Weight to Molar Quantity (for proteins) (Bioline,
24 https://www.bioline.com/media/calculator/01_04.html). The amount of gRNA (100 nt in length)
25 was calculated using the formula: mass of ssRNA (g) = moles of ssRNA (mol) x ((length of ssRNA (nt) x
26 321.47 g/mol/nt) + 18.02 g/mol) (NEBioCalculator®, NEB, <https://nebiocalculator.neb.com/>). The

1 amount of target DNA was calculated using the formula: mass of dsDNA (g) = moles of dsDNA (mol) x
2 ((length of dsDNA (bp) x 617.96 g/mol/bp) + 36.04 g/mol) (NEBioCalculator®, NEB). After incubation,
3 the reaction was mixed with 6X loading dye (NEB) and analysed on a 2% agarose gel. Control DNA
4 template was prepared by mixing 500 ng (for 2:2:1 assay) or 400 ng (for 10:10:1 assay) of target DNA
5 with nuclease-free water and 6X loading dye. The Cas9 cleavage assay with a ratio of 2:2:1 of Cas9:
6 gRNA: target DNA was done for g4 and g7, and the target DNA was the 530 bp amplicon of the AS1
7 gene amplified from cDNA of Desiree. The assay with a 10:10:1 ratio of molecular weight of Cas9:
8 gRNA: target DNA was done for g67 and g10, and the target DNA was the 593-bp amplicon of the
9 VInv gene from DNA of Desiree.

10 **3.3 Results**

11 **3.3.1 PCR amplification of target genes**

12 All primers were initially tested at 55°C annealing temperature. The VInv2 primers worked
13 efficiently with a 593-bp PCR product amplified (Figure 3-2), but there was no product for the VInv1
14 primer pair at this annealing temperature. A gradient PCR with VInv1 primers was performed with
15 annealing temperatures ranging from 48°C to 66°C to find the optimal temperature. The desired
16 543-bp DNA fragment was successfully amplified from Desiree at an annealing temperature of 65°C,
17 and a slightly larger DNA band from Atlantic was observed at the same annealing temperature on
18 agarose gel (Figure 3-2).



1

2 **Figure 3-2. Gel electrophoresis of PCR products using Vlnv1 and Vlnv2 primers.** Lane (-): negative control, lane A: Atlantic DNA, lane D: Desiree DNA, lane M: 100 bp – 3000 bp DNA marker.

4 The cDNA synthesised from RNA of Atlantic and Desiree was tested with primers for the endogenous

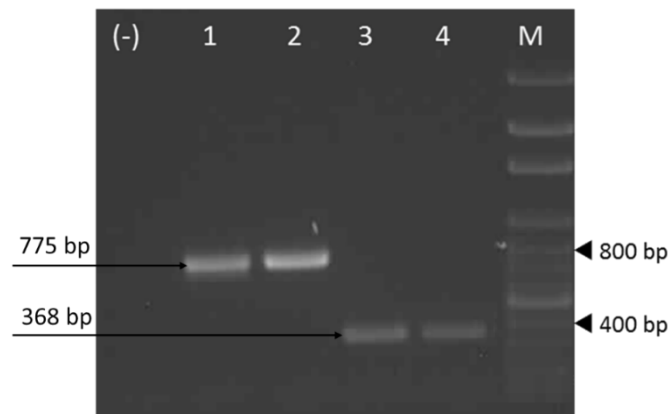
5 *GAPDH* gene in a PCR reaction. Gel electrophoresis results showed the primers could amplify a 368-

6 bp amplicon from cDNA samples, verifying that the cDNAs were successfully synthesised from the

7 extracted RNAs and there was no DNA contamination in the total RNA extracted (Figure 3-3). This

8 cDNA was used as a template for PCR with Vlnv3 and AS1 primers, and their expected amplicons,

9 664 bp and 530 bp, respectively, were amplified at 55°C annealing temperature (Figure 3-4).



10

11 **Figure 3-3. Gel electrophoresis of the PCR amplifying a *GAPDH* gene fragment from cDNA of**
 12 **potato.** Lane (-): negative control, lanes (1) and (2): amplicons from the DNAs of Atlantic and
 13 Desiree, respectively; lanes (3) and (4) synthesised cDNA from RNA of Atlantic and Desiree,
 14 respectively; lane M: 100 bp – 3000 bp DNA marker.

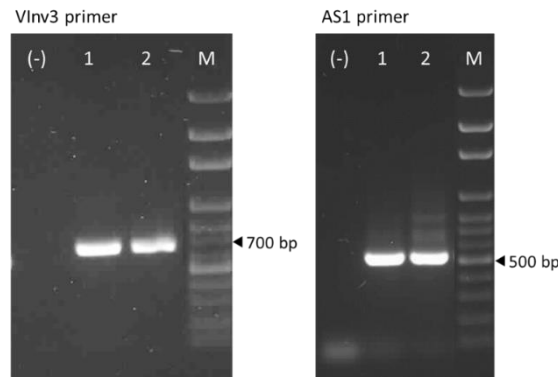


Figure 3-4. Gel electrophoresis of RT-PCR using Vlnv3 and AS1 primers. Lane (-) negative control; lanes (1) and (2): amplicons from synthesised cDNA from RNA of Atlantic and Desiree, respectively; lane M: 100 bp – 3000 bp DNA marker.

3.3.2 Sequencing the PCR products and identification of target sites

The PCR and RT-PCR products of Vlnv2 and AS1 primers were sequenced with corresponding reverse primers, and the sequencing chromatograms showed clear and evenly spaced nucleotide peaks. The multiple sequence alignments revealed that Atlantic and Desiree are highly conserved when compared with the reference sequence. Several double peaks or overlapping peaks were found in the chromatograms, indicating potential SNPs, and they are labelled as black 'N' in the alignment (Figure 3-5 and Figure 3-6).

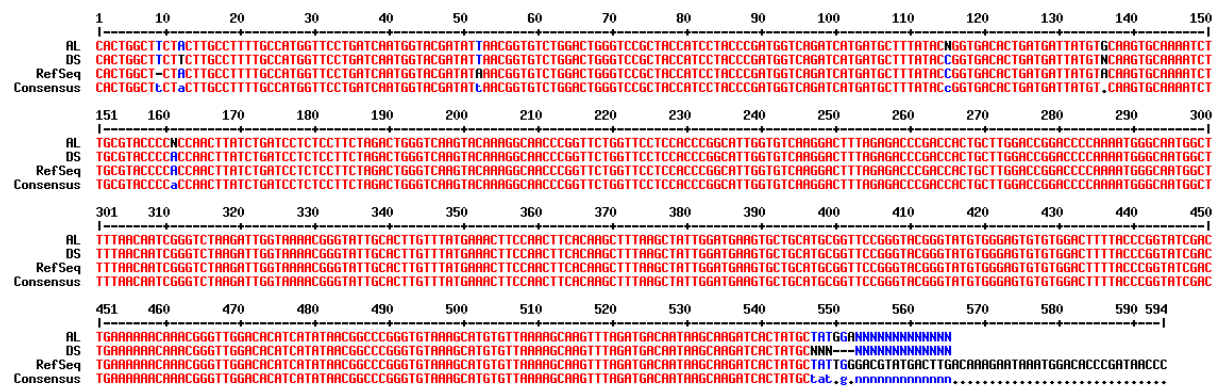


Figure 3-5. Multiple sequence alignment of PCR products amplified with the Vlnv2 primer pair from Atlantic and Desiree. AL: DNA sample of Atlantic, DS: DNA sample from Desiree, RefSeq: reference DNA sequence of *vacuolar invertase* gene (accession no. HQ110080.1).

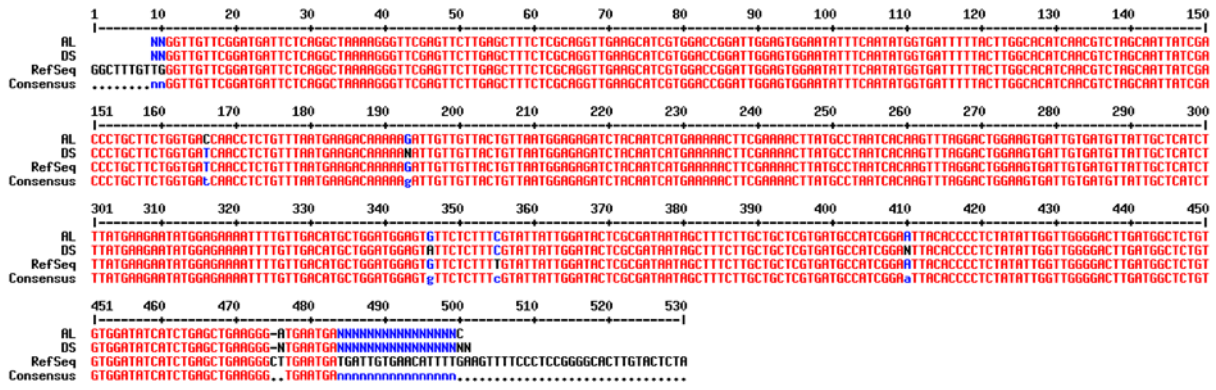
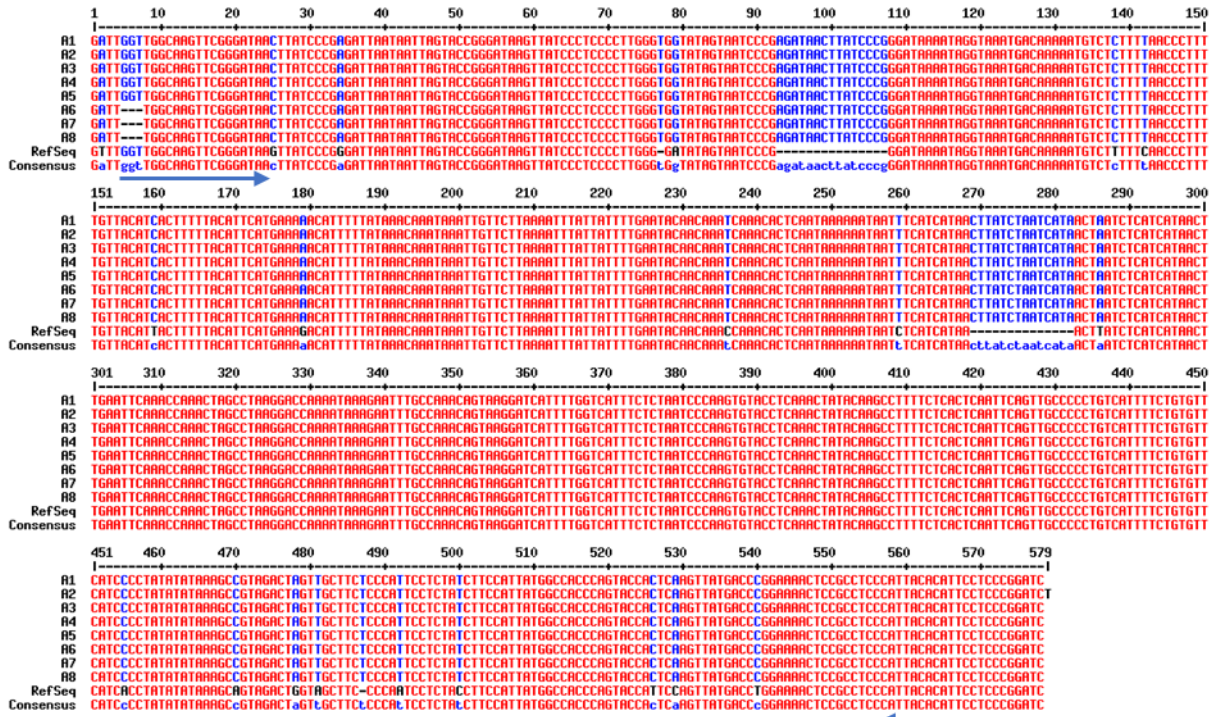


Figure 3-6. Multiple sequence alignment of RT-PCR products amplified with AS1 primer pair from Atlantic and Desiree. AL: synthesised cDNA from RNA sample of Atlantic, DS: synthesised cDNA from RNA sample of Desiree, RefSeq: mRNA sequence of *asparagine synthetase 1* gene (accession no. XM_006343993.2)

The PCR products of Vlnv1 primers from both cultivars showed mixed signals in the chromatograms. These products were cloned into *E. coli*, and six individual clones of each PCR product were used for sequencing. Three alleles (D1, D2 and D4) with 97.6% of identical sites were detected from multiple sequence alignment of Desiree, as shown in Figure 3-7 A (D1, D3, D5 and D6 are the same). Variations found among sequences were mostly single-base changes and a one-base insertion at position 453 of D4 (Figure 3-7A). In contrast, the alignment of the cloned sequences of Atlantic showed only 90.3% of identical sites, and all six sequences were different. Besides single-base changes, there were four insertions of 1-bp, 14-bp and 15-bp found among the six clones (Figure 3-7B).

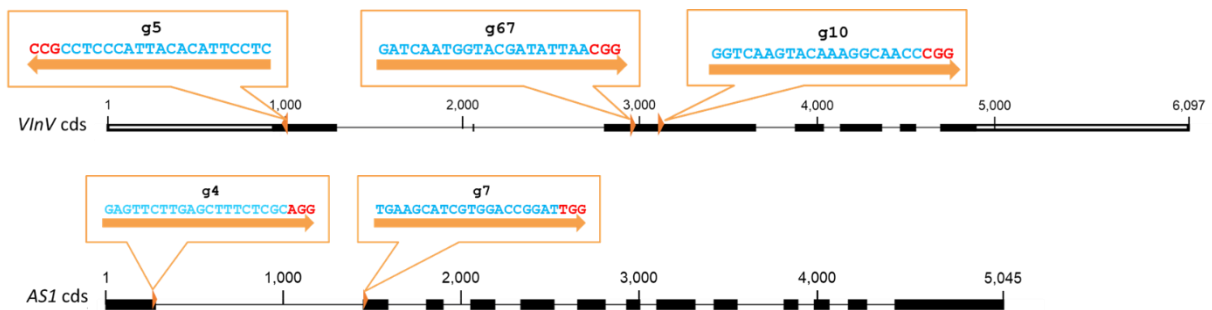
1 amplified with the proof-reading Taq enzyme had different variations than the previous six clones
 2 from PCR product with normal Taq enzyme. As shown previously (Figure 3-7 A), there were other
 3 variations among the eight sequences.



4
 5 **Figure 3-8. Multiple sequence alignment of cloned PCR products of Atlantic using Vlnv1 primers**
 6 **and high-fidelity DNA polymerase.** A1 to A8: individual clones of PCR amplicon of Vlnv1 primer
 7 from Atlantic, RefSeq: reference DNA sequence of *vacuolar invertase* gene (accession no.
 8 HQ110080.1). Blue arrows indicate the position and direction of primers.

9 Mixed signals were also observed in the chromatograms results of direct amplicon sequencing from
 10 Vlnv3 amplicons of both cultivars. These amplicons were cloned and sequenced as done previously
 11 for amplicons of Vlnv1 primers. Alignments of clone sequences revealed five different sequences
 12 among six clones of Atlantic (Figure 3-9 A, clone A4 and A6 are the same), and all six clones of
 13 Desiree were different from each other (Figure 3-9 B).

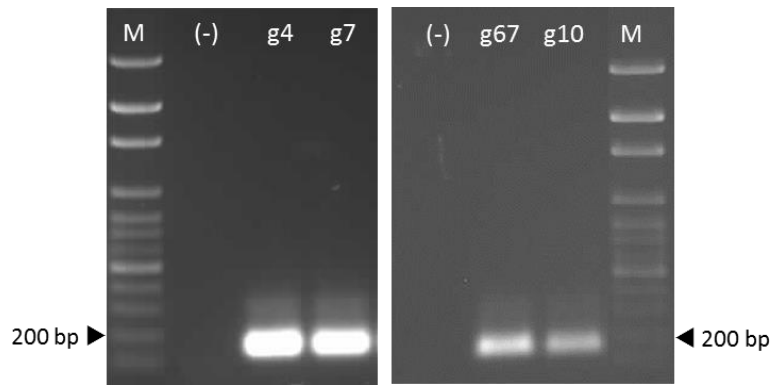
1 targets found on both forward and reverse strands for each target gene. After excluding those
 2 containing a TTTT stretch or hypervariable regions, the remaining sequences were searched on the
 3 potato genome to filter out those with potential off-targets. Target sites that were close to the 5'-
 4 end with no similar sequences containing up to six mismatches in the seed sequence were chosen.
 5 Three suitable targets were selected for the *Vlnv* gene and two targets for the *AS1* gene (Figure
 6 3-10). One suitable target (g5) was found on exon 1 of the *Vlnv* gene, but it was specific only to
 7 Atlantic, while the others (g67, g10 on *Vlnv* gene, g4 and g7 on *AS1* gene) were specific to both
 8 Atlantic and Desiree.



9
 10 **Figure 3-10. Target sites for gRNAs for *vacuolar invertase* and *asparagine synthetase 1* genes.**
 11 White boxes represent untranslated regions; thick black lines represent exons; thin black lines
 12 represent introns; orange arrows represent the direction of selected target sites; the blue text
 13 indicates guide sequences, and protospacer-adjacent motifs (PAMs) are indicated by red text. The
 14 targets were named according to the list regenerated by the Cas-Designer tool.

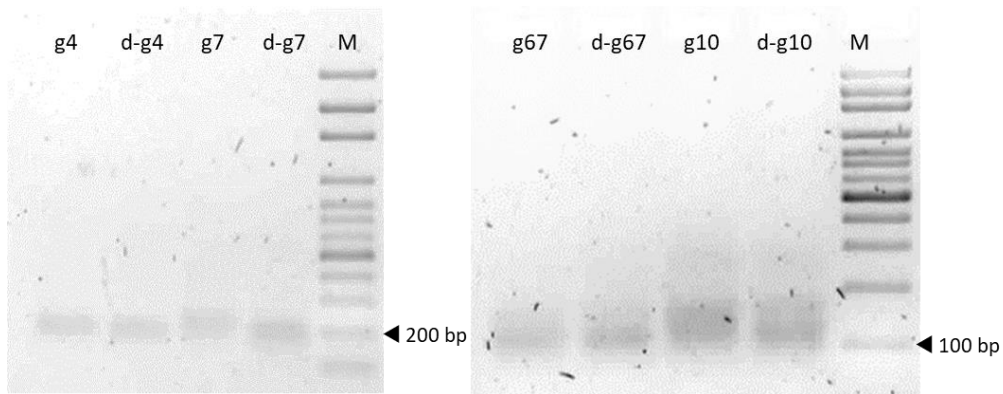
15 3.3.3 *In vitro* Cas9 cleavage assay

16 The assembly of gRNA with scaffold construct is described in section 4.3.1 of chapter 4, and this
 17 construct was used to make the DNA template for gRNA transcription. The templates were
 18 successfully assembled by PCR, amplifying a product at approximately 150 bp (Figure 3-11). After *in*
 19 *vitro* transcription, RNA was purified and resuspended in 0.1 mM EDTA before gel electrophoresis
 20 analysis. The RNA samples bands were expected to be 133 bp, and they were between the 100 bp
 21 and 200 bp of DNA marker on the gel. The denatured RNA appeared as a slightly smaller band
 22 compared to non-denatured RNA (Figure 3-12).



1

Figure 3-11. Gel electrophoresis of PCR for generating DNA templates for gRNA transcription. Lane (-): negative control with primers and nuclease-free water; lanes g4, g7, g67 and g10: gRNA transcription templates of corresponding gRNAs; lane M: 100 bp – 3000 bp DNA marker.



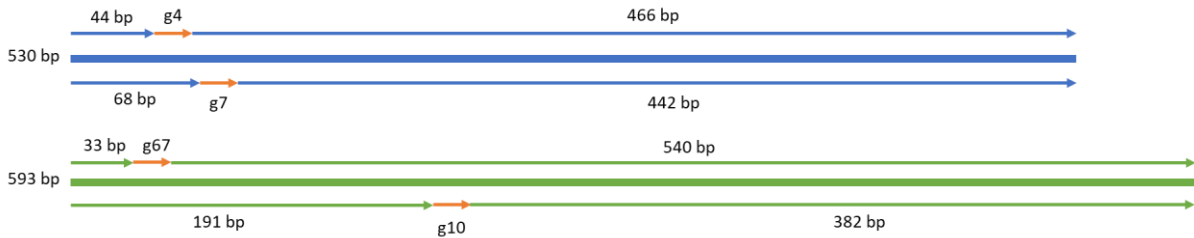
5

Figure 3-12. Gel electrophoresis analysing gRNAs. Lanes g4, g7, g67, g10: gRNAs of corresponding targets; lanes d-g4, d-g7, d-g67, d-g10: denatured gRNAs of corresponding targets; lane M: 100 bp – 3000 bp DNA marker.

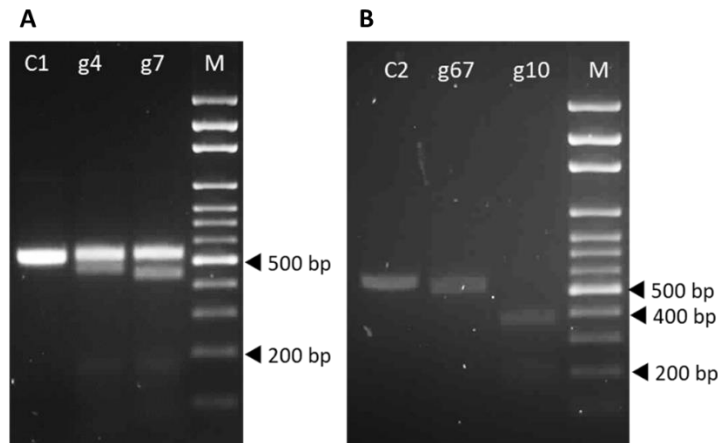
6

9 The Cas9 cleavage assays were performed with the expected cleavage sites on the respective PCR
 10 products illustrated in Figure 3-13. The results showed that at the 2:2:1 ratio of Cas9:gRNA:target
 11 DNA used for g4 and g7, not all target DNA was cleaved, as uncut DNA can be seen on the gel (Figure
 12 3-14 A). There were redundant gRNAs observed on the gel, between the 100 bp and 200 bp sizes
 13 DNA markers. The two bands visible near the 400 bp size marker in lane g4 and g7 were similar to
 14 the expected 466-bp and 442-bp cut products; the smaller products (44 bp of g4 and 68 bp of g7)
 15 were not visible (Figure 3-14 A). In contrast, no uncut DNA and no residual gRNA was detected on
 16 the gel of the 10:10:1 (molecular weight ratio) assay, indicating that all gRNAs are bound to Cas9,
 17 and all DNA was cleaved. The cut products were of the expected size: 540 bp for g67, 382 bp and

1 191 bp for g10, the smaller product (33 bp) of g67 was not visible (Figure 3-14B). These results
 2 established that all four gRNAs efficiently created DSBs in DNA by guiding Cas9 to the intended
 3 target sites.



4 **Figure 3-13. Expected DNA products of Cas9 cleavage assay.** The thick lines represent target DNA (AS1 amplicon = 530 bp, Vlnv2 amplicon = 593 bp), orange arrows represent gRNA target sequences, thin arrows represent digested amplicons.



8 **Figure 3-14. Gel electrophoresis of Cas9 cleavage assay.** Lane C1: 530-bp amplicon of *AS1* gene from cDNA of Atlantic; lane C2: 593-bp amplicon of *Vlnv* gene from DNA of Atlantic; lanes g4, g7, g67, g10: corresponding gRNAs in Cas9 assay; lane M: 100 bp – 3000 bp DNA marker.

12 3.4 Discussion

13 In this chapter, *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes from potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree were amplified and
 14 sequenced to provide data for designing gRNAs. Sequencing results revealed that amplified
 15 fragments of the *AS1* gene and exon 3 of the *Vlnv* gene from Atlantic and Desiree were highly
 16 conserved. In contrast, exon 1 of the *Vlnv* gene had overlapping peaks in sequencing
 17 chromatograms of PCR products indicating multiple PCR products. Cloning and sequencing
 18 identified different alleles for the *Vlnv* gene. The cultivated potatoes are well-known for their

1 tetraploid and heterozygous characteristics. For example, approximately half a million SNPs and
2 indels were identified in the DM1-3 reference genome ([Kyriakidou et al., 2020](#)). These genetic
3 variations can create uninterpretable sequence reads from amplicon sequencing, as seen in VInv1
4 and VInv3 primer cases. The tetraploid characteristic of potato allows a maximum of four alleles of a
5 given gene which is present as only one copy in the genome. The presence of six different *VInv* gene
6 sequences from PCR clones of Atlantic (Figure 3-7B) obtained in this study did not fit this pattern.
7 The genomic structure of the *VInv* gene has been studied before, and there were no duplicated
8 fragments of this gene found in the potato genome ([Draffehn et al., 2010](#)). Thus, the variations in
9 cloned sequences were probably due to Taq polymerase errors. This hypothesis was confirmed
10 when repeating PCRs with VInv1 primers and high-fidelity DNA polymerase followed by cloning and
11 sequencing of individual clones indicated only two alleles, and no variation found previously were
12 repeated (Figure 3-8). This result could also explain the sequence variants in the case of VInv3
13 primers. However, since the conserved regions found among cDNA clones from VInv3 primers were
14 sufficient for identifying target sites, these amplicons were not double-checked by using proof-
15 reading DNA polymerase.

16 The error-prone repair of DSBs via the NHEJ pathway can lead to indels which may initiate frameshift
17 and produce premature stop codons ([Ueta et al., 2017](#), [Nishitani et al., 2016](#), [Tuncel et al., 2019](#)). If
18 DNA mutations are induced in early exons, it will trigger nonsense-mediated mRNA decay, leading to
19 mRNA degradation ([Popp and Maquat, 2016](#)). Thus, the exons near the 5' end of the target genes
20 were ideal for targeting as they should maximise the chance of knocking out or down-regulating
21 gene expression. In addition, the use of multiple gRNAs for one target gene would also increase the
22 gene-editing efficiency as reported in Arabidopsis ([Li et al., 2013](#), [Pauwels et al., 2018](#)), rice ([Zhou et](#)
23 [al., 2014](#)), tomato ([Brooks et al., 2014](#)) and potato ([Veillet et al., 2019a](#)). This strategy has been
24 applied in several crop plants, such as tomato, in which the seven-exon *S//AA9* gene involved in leaf
25 morphology was targeted in exon 2 with three gRNAs ([Ueta et al., 2017](#)). Premature stop codons
26 were generated with a 1-bp and 73-bp deletion, resulting in abnormal leaf morphology, indicating

1 knockdown or even knockout of the *S//AA9* gene. Similarly, four gRNAs were designed to target
2 regions in the first seven exons of the 15-exons *phytoene desaturase (PDS)* gene in apple, resulting in
3 premature stop codons and eventually gene knockout ([Nishitani et al., 2016](#)). In potato, the loss of
4 function of the GBSSI protein was successfully achieved using two gRNAs targeting the first two
5 exons of the gene ([Veillet et al., 2019a](#)). These reports confirmed that the gene knockout could be
6 achieved using multiple gRNAs targeting early exons of the desired gene.

7 In the *in vitro* Cas9 cleavage assays, the 2:2:1 amount ratio of Cas9: gRNA: target DNA was 1 µg Cas9:
8 1 µg gRNA: 0.5 µg target DNA resulted in uncut target DNA and redundant gRNA after the reaction.
9 Given that the Cas9 protein is 160 kDa, there was 0.0063 nM in 1 µg, but gRNA was 100 nt in length,
10 making it 0.031 nM in 1 µg, five times more than Cas9 protein in the reaction. An excess amount of
11 gRNA over Cas9 explains the redundant gRNA after the reaction, as only one gRNA is required for a
12 Cas9 protein. On the other hand, 1 µg (0.0063 nM) of Cas9 was approximately triple the amount of
13 0.0018 nM in 0.5 µg of target DNA, but it was not sufficient for complete cleavage of the target DNA.
14 A molar ratio of 5:5:1 or higher of Cas9:gRNA:target DNA was recommended ([Anders and Jinek,](#)
15 [2014](#)), and the 10:10:1 molar ratio of Cas9:gRNA:target DNA resulted in a complete cutting of the
16 target DNA without redundant gRNAs. Cas9 is a single-turnover enzyme; thus it is crucial to have
17 excess Cas9 protein-gRNA complex over the target DNA to ensure complete cleavage ([Sternberg et](#)
18 [al., 2014](#)).

19 In conclusion, two gRNAs were designed to target two sites of each gene, *VInv* and *AS1*, to improve
20 editing efficiency and the potential to delete a large fragment between two sites. The efficiency of
21 the designed gRNAs was demonstrated in an *in vitro* cleavage assay, and they performed as
22 expected. All four gRNAs used to make transformation vectors were also used to assemble
23 ribonucleoprotein complexes with the Cas9 protein for the direct delivery of the CRISPR/Cas9 system
24 into plant cells (see chapter 5).

Chapter 4

Generation of transgenic potato events expressing Cas9 protein and gRNAs targeting *vacuolar invertase* and *asparagine synthetase 1* genes

1 **4.1 Introduction**

2 In this chapter, binary vectors harbouring the Cas9 protein and gRNA(s) coding sequences were
3 assembled and then delivered to plant cells using *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*. The gRNAs
4 complementary to the target site (20 nt in length) appended to a gRNA scaffold and driven by a
5 promoter of choice were assembled into a construct. One gRNA construct may be sufficient to
6 induce gene editing by CRISPR/Cas9, but multiple gRNAs are needed for multiplexing or to increase
7 editing efficiency ([Li et al., 2013](#), [Pauwels et al., 2018](#)). For example, two gRNAs targeting the same
8 gene (dual-gRNA system) can generate a DNA fragment deletion between two gRNA sites ([Mao et](#)
9 [al., 2013](#), [Brooks et al., 2014](#), [Zhou et al., 2014](#), [Veillet et al., 2019a](#)). This concept has been applied
10 successfully both in model plants and commercial crops, including tobacco ([Gao et al., 2015](#)), tomato
11 ([Pan et al., 2016](#)), Arabidopsis and rice ([Feng et al., 2013](#), [Li et al., 2013](#), [Zhang et al., 2014](#)). In
12 principle, multiplexing can be achieved when using a CRISPR/Cas9 system with multiple gRNAs. For
13 plant transformation with plasmid DNA, multiple gRNA constructs can be stacked in one vector, but
14 this process is often challenging and time-consuming. In addition, due to the length of each gRNA
15 construct, which is typically 400 bp to 500 bp (depending on the promoter size), and the plasmid
16 vector size, the number of gRNA constructs that can be integrated into a vector may be limited.
17 Examples of multiplexing include six gRNA-expressing cassettes integrated into a single plasmid
18 vector ([Xing et al., 2014](#), [Zhang et al., 2016b](#)). However, up to nine gRNAs or more can be delivered
19 from a single gene cassette, for example, using endogenous tRNA processing ([Xie et al., 2015](#)). This
20 tRNA strategy enables more gRNAs to be combined in a single vector, increasing the potential for
21 multiple gene editing using CRISPR/Cas9. Interestingly, gRNA constructs with tRNA had increased
22 transcription and a slightly higher mutation rate than those without tRNAs when tested in rice
23 protoplasts ([Xie et al., 2015](#)). Hence, assembling a transformation vector with a tRNA processing
24 system and multiple gRNAs is ideal for combining multiple individual gRNAs.

1 In this chapter, the DNA templates of gRNAs targeting the *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes were assembled using
2 overlapping PCR. Two gRNA expression cassettes targeting each gene at two sites were joined and
3 integrated into the pFGC-pcoCas9 vector via restriction sites. In addition, a construct was designed
4 and synthesised commercially, with an expression cassette of four gRNAs complementary to two
5 target sites each on the *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes, in which each gRNA was followed by a gRNA scaffold
6 and tRNA processing system. This expression cassette was ligated into the vectors pFGC-pcoCas9
7 and pFN117-Cas9 (kindly provided by Dr Fatima Naim). Vectors with Cas9 and gRNA expressing
8 sequences were delivered into leaf discs of potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree using
9 *Agrobacterium*-mediated plant transformation, followed by tissue culture and shoot regeneration.
10 Recovered plantlets from selection media were screened by PCR and sequenced to identify
11 transformants and putative mutants with edited *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes.

12 **4.2 Methodology**

13 **4.2.1 Assembly of gRNA constructs**

14 The DNA constructs of gRNA were assembled following the protocol of [Li et al. \(2013\)](#). The pUC119-
15 gRNA vector (a gift from Jen Sheen, Addgene plasmid # 52255; <http://n2t.net/addgene:52255> ;
16 RRID:Addgene_52255) was used as a PCR template. This vector contains an Arabidopsis RNA
17 polymerase III (Pol III) gene promoter U6 (AtU6-1) promoter driving a 20-nt guide RNA targeting
18 Arabidopsis *phytoene desaturase 3 (AtPDS3)* gene expression with a gRNA scaffold and a TTTTTT as
19 the terminator (Figure 4-1). The 20-nt sequence was replaced by the target sequences for the *Vlnv*
20 and *AS1* genes using overlapping PCR.

1

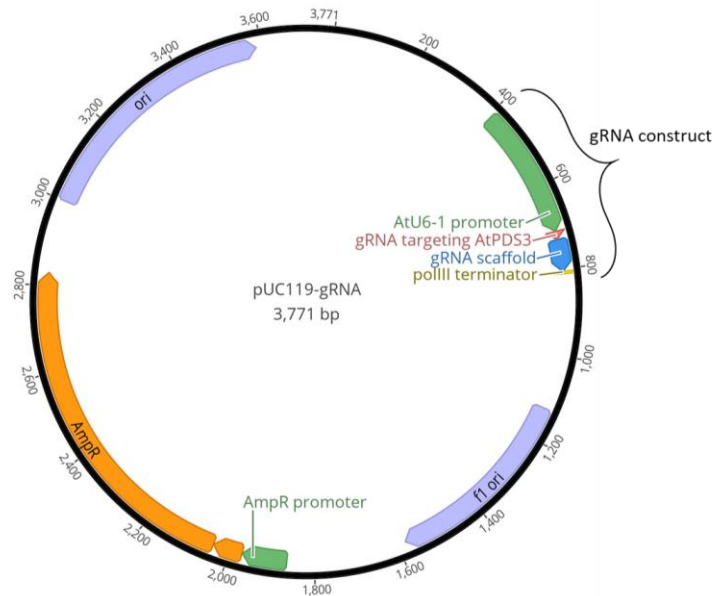
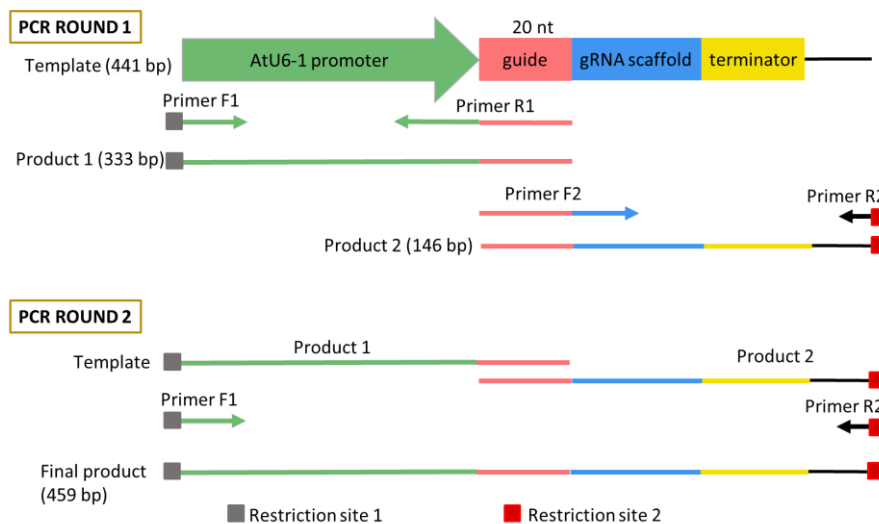


Figure 4-1. Map of the pUC119-gRNA vector. (Addgene plasmid # 52255; <https://www.addgene.org/52255/>). The gRNA construct region from 407 to 812 contains an Arabidopsis U6 (AtU6-1) promoter driving the expression of 20-nt gRNA targeting Arabidopsis *phytoene desaturase 3* (*AtPDS3*) gene with gRNA scaffold and polymerase III (Pol III) terminator. This plasmid was used as a DNA template in overlapping PCRs to introduce the selected target site into the new gRNA expression cassette.

2



8

Figure 4-2. Diagram of the overlapping PCR method for assembling gRNA expression cassettes. In PCR round 1, the selected target site was introduced into the new gRNA construct using primers F2 and R1. The primers F1 and R1 yielded product 1 (333 bp) containing restriction site 1, AtU6-1 promoter and the target site. The primers F2 and R2 yielded product 2 (146 bp) containing the target site, gRNA scaffold, terminator, and restriction site 2. In PCR round 2, two products from PCR round 1 were joined into the final product (459 bp) using primers F1 and R2. Restriction sites 1 and 2 facilitate the assembly of dual-gRNA constructs and the integration of gRNA expression cassettes into a plasmid vector. Arrows indicate directions and positions of primers.

1 The overlapping PCR method consisted of two rounds. In the first PCR round, to make the g4RNA
2 expression cassette, pUC119-gRNA plasmid DNA was amplified with the gRNAEcoRI-F and g4-AS1-R
3 primers to amplify product 1 g4-AS1-F, and gRNAKpnI-R primers to amplify product 2 (Figure 4-2,
4 Table 4-1). PCR reactions were set up with 5 μ L of 2X GoTag Green Master Mix (Promega[®]
5 Corporation), 1 μ L of 10 μ M forward and reverse primer each, 1 μ L of 100 ng/ μ L pUC119-gRNA
6 plasmid DNA and 2 μ L of nuclease-free water. The PCR program was set up in a thermal cycler
7 (Applied Biosystems Veriti Thermal Cycler, Thermo Fisher Scientific) with initial denaturation at 95°C
8 for 5 minutes; followed by 30 cycles of 95°C for 30 s, 55°C for 30 s, 72°C for 40 s; and a final
9 extension at 72°C for 7 minutes. PCR amplicons were analysed on 1 % agarose gel (Agarose, Fisher
10 Biotech) stained with SYBR Safe DNA Gel Stain (Thermo Fisher Scientific) in 1X tris-acetate-EDTA
11 (TAE) buffer alongside a 100 bp – 3000 bp DNA marker (100 bp Ladder DNA marker, Axygen
12 Biosciences). Gel electrophoresis was done at 70 V for 70 minutes. The gel was visualised using a
13 UV transilluminator, and the DNA bands of products 1 and 2 from the gel were pooled and purified
14 together using a Wizard[®] SV Gel and PCR Clean-Up System (Promega[®] Corporation).

15 In the second PCR round for overlapping the two products, the pooled and purified DNA of products
16 1 and 2 was amplified with the gRNAEcoRI-F and gRNAKpnI-R primers in a reaction with 10 μ L of 2X
17 GreenTaq Master Mix, 1 μ L of 10 μ M forward primer, 1 μ L of 10 μ M reverse primer, 1 μ L of 100 ng of
18 the pooled DNA and 7 μ L of nuclease-free water. PCR was done with the same cycling conditions as
19 round 1 in the thermal cycler; products were run on 1 % agarose gel and extracted with the Wizard
20 clean-up kit. The g7RNA expression cassettes were assembled using the same method, with
21 gRNAKpnI-F and g7-AS1-R, g7-AS1-F and gRNAPacI-R primers, respectively for product 1 and product
22 2 in the first PCR round; gRNAKpnI-F and gRNAPacI-R primers were used in the second round of PCR
23 (Table 4-1). The g4RNA expression cassette consisted of EcoRI-AtU6 promoter-g4-gRNA scaffold-
24 KpnI, and g7RNA expression cassette as KpnI-AtU6 promoter-g7-gRNA scaffold-PacI. This assembly
25 method was also used to make the g67RNA and g10RNA expression cassettes in the format of EcoRI-

- 1 AtU6 promoter-g67-gRNA scaffold-XhoI and XhoI-AtU6 promoter-g10-gRNA scaffold-Pacl,
 2 respectively. All primers used are listed in Table 1.

3 **Table 4-1. Primers for assembly of gRNA constructs by overlapping PCR.** Target regions are in blue,
 4 restriction sites are in red.

Primer name	Primer sequence (5' to 3')
gRNAEcoRI-F	TCAGAAATTCAGAAATCTCAAATTCCG
gRNAKpnI-F	CATGTGGTACCAGAAATCTCAAATTCCG
gRNAKpnI-R	TCAGGTACCTAATGCCAACTTTGTACA
gRNAPacli-R	GTGCTTAATTAATAATGCCAACTTTGTACA
gRNAXhoI-F	GCACTCGAGAGAAATCTCAAATTCCG
gRNAXhoI-R	TCACTCGAGTAATGCCAACTTTGTACA
g4-AS1-R	GCGAGAAAGCTCAAGAACTCAATCACTACTTCGTCTCT
g4-AS1-F	GAGTCTTGAGCTTTCTCGGTTTTAGAGCTAGAAATAGC
g7-AS1-R	ATCCGGTCCACGATGCTTCAATCACTACTTCGTCTCT
g7-AS1-F	TGAAGCATCGTGGACCGGATTTTTAGAGCTAGAAATAGC
g67-VlnV-R	TTAATATCGTACCATTGATCAATCACTACTTCGTCTCT
g67-VlnV-F	GATCAATGGTACGATATTAAGTTTTAGAGCTAGAAATAGC
g10-VlnV-R	GGTTGCCTTTGTACTIONGACCAATCACTACTTCGTCTCT
g10-VlnV-F	GGTCAAGTACAAAGGCAACCGTTTTAGAGCTAGAAATAGC

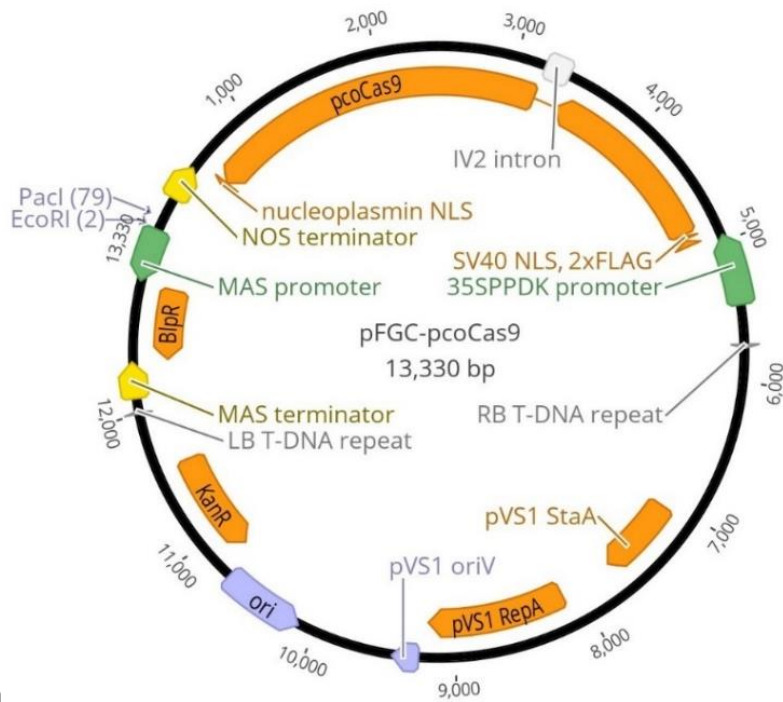
5 4.2.2 Assembly of the CRISPR/Cas9 transformation vector

6 4.2.2.1 Constructing plant transformation vectors with dual-gRNA system targeting one gene

7 The g4RNA and g7RNA expression cassettes were joined via the KpnI restriction site, while g67RNA
 8 and g10RNA cassettes were joined via the XhoI restriction site to make the g4g7 dual-gRNA
 9 expression system (g4g7 cassette) and g67g10 dual-gRNA expression system (g67g10 cassette),
 10 respectively. Briefly, for each dual-gRNA assembly, a combination of 350 ng of each gRNA
 11 expression cassette purified after the second round of overlapping PCR was mixed with 3 µL of 10X
 12 CutSmart® Buffer (New England Biolabs®), 1 µL of KpnI-HF (g4RNA and g7RNA) or XhoI (g67RNA and
 13 g10RNA) (New England Biolabs®) and nuclease-free water to make up the final volume to 30 µL; the
 14 mixture was incubated at 37°C in a thermal cycler for two hours. The product was visualised on a 1%

1 agarose gel, and the DNA band was extracted from the agarose gel and cloned into the pGEM-T®
2 easy vector (Promega®) for sequencing. Cloning was carried out as described in section 3.2.4.1 of
3 Chapter 3, and the sequencing was done according to section 3.2.5 of Chapter 3. The correct dual-
4 gRNA construct was selected after analysing the sequencing results and ligated to pFGC-pcoCas9 via
5 EcoRI and PacI restriction sites (Figure 4-3).

6 Double restriction digestion of pGEMT-easy vector (to release the dual gRNA expression cassette)
7 and of the pFGC-pcoCas9 (to linearise the vector for use as a backbone) was done in a 30 µL reaction
8 by mixing 3 µL of 10X CutSmart® Buffer, 1 µL of EcoRI-HF (New England Biolabs®), 1 µL of PacI (New
9 England Biolabs®), 1 µL of 800 ng of plasmid DNA and 24 µL of nuclease-free water. The mixture was
10 incubated at 37°C for four hours; the digested products were run on an agarose gel and purified for
11 ligation at 5:1 ratio of linearised pFGC-pcoCas9 vector and the two digested dual-gRNA cassettes
12 (g4g7 or g67g10) in each reaction. The vector was transformed into *E.coli* JM109 competent cells as
13 described in section 3.2.4.1 of chapter 3, and bacterial colonies were screened by PCR using the
14 primers FGC-F and FGC-R with an expected amplicon size of 1,134 bp–(Table 4-2). The thermal
15 cycling program was set at 95°C for 5 min; 30 cycles of 95°C (30 s), 55°C (30 s), 72°C (1 min); and a
16 final extension at 72°C for 7 minutes. Plasmid DNA of PCR-positive bacterial colonies was sequenced
17 in both directions using the primers FGC-F2 and FGC-R to confirm the construct assembly (Table 4-2).



1 a

Figure 4-3. Map of the pFGC-pcoCas9 vector. (Addgene plasmid #52256, <https://www.addgene.org/52256/>). The vector contains a plant codon-optimised Cas9 expressing sequence (pcoCas9) with a potato IV2 intron. The pcoCas9 expression is driven by a 35SPPDK promoter (hybrid promoter consisting of the cauliflower mosaic virus 35S enhancer fused to the maize C4PPDK basal promoter). Selection marker for plants is the *BIpR* gene which confers resistance to bialaphos or phosphinothricin (glufosinate). The gRNA expression cassettes were inserted into the vector via ligation at the *PacI* and *EcoRI* restriction sites.

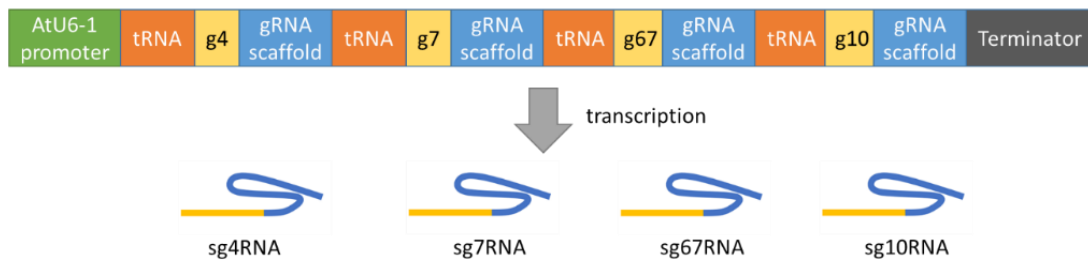
9 **Table 4-2. Primers used in PCR screening for gRNA constructs in the transformation vectors**

Primer name	Primer sequence (5' to 3')	Corresponding vector
FGC-F	ACGTCACGTCTTGCGCACTG	pFGC-pcoCas9
FGC-R	CTAGGATAAATTATCGCGCGCGGTG	
FGC-F2	GAAATTCAGGCCCGGTTGCC	
FN117-F	CATAACGTGACTCCCTTAATTCTCC	pFN117-Cas9
FN117-R	CATGTTGACCTCCAAGCTTGAATTC	

10 **4.2.2.2 Constructing plant transformation vectors with four gRNA targeting two genes**
 11 **simultaneously**

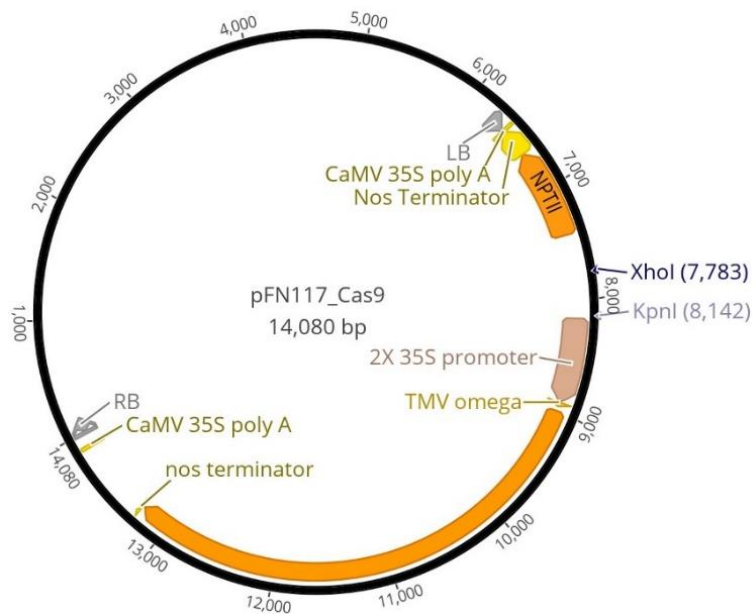
12 A construct expression cassette, named ASVI, was designed with AtU6-1 promoter, the four gRNAs
 13 separated by the tRNA (transfer RNA) processing sequences in between, XhoI and EcoRI restriction

1 sites upstream of the gRNA promoter and Pacl and KpnI restriction sites downstream the terminator
 2 (Figure 4-4). The sequence was then sent to GENEWIZ® for synthesis. This expression cassette was
 3 inserted into the pFGC-pcoCas9 vector via EcoRI and Pacl restriction sites to make the pFGC-ASVI
 4 vector and into the pFN117-Cas9 vector (Figure 4-5) via XhoI and KpnI restriction sites to make
 5 pFN117-ASVI vector following the method described in section 4.2.2.1. After ligation of the digested
 6 ASVI expression cassette and the vector (pFGC-pcoCas9 or pFN117-Cas9) digested with the same
 7 restriction enzymes, the vector was transformed into *E.coli* JM109 competent cells as described in
 8 section 3.2.4.1 of chapter 3. PCR colony screening for the ASVI cassette in pFGC-pcoCas9 was done
 9 using the primer pair FGC-F2 and FGC-R (amplicon size 1,342 bp, Table 4-2). Primers FN117-F and
 10 FN117-R (amplicon size 1,120 bp, Table 4-2) were used in PCR colony screening for ASVI-containing
 11 pFN117-Cas9 vector. Plasmid DNA of a colony with positive PCR screening result was sequenced in
 12 both directions using the same primer pairs respectively.



13

14 **Figure 4-4. The ASVI expression cassette contains four gRNAs appended to individual gRNA scaffolds and the tRNA (transfer RNA) processing system.** sg4RNA and sg7RNA: single guide-RNAs g4 and g7 target the potato *asparagine synthetase 1* gene, sg67RNA and sg10RNA: single guide-RNAs g67 and g10 target the potato *vacuolar invertase* gene.



1

Figure 4-5. Map of the pFN117-Cas9 vector. The Cas9 coding sequence is shown in orange which is expressed by a 2X 35S promoter. TMV omega: a translation enhancer from tobacco mosaic virus. NPTII: *neomycin phosphotransferase II (nptII)* gene provides resistance to the antibiotic kanamycin. LB and RB: left border and right border, respectively. The gRNA expression cassettes were inserted into this vector via XhoI and KpnI restriction sites.

2

7 **4.2.3 Transformation of *A. tumefaciens* competent cells with the assembled CRISPR/Cas9** 8 **vectors**

9 **4.2.3.1 Preparation of freeze-thaw *A. tumefaciens* GV3101 competent cells**

10 Bacterial glycerol stock was streaked on a solid LB medium (10 g/L bacto tryptone, 5 g/L yeast
11 extract, 5 g/L NaCl, 10 g/L bacto agar) containing 25 mg/L rifampicin and incubated overnight at 28°C
12 in the dark. A single colony was cultured overnight in 10 mL of LB supplemented with 25 mg/L
13 rifampicin in a 50-mL conical centrifuge tube with a screw cap on a rotary shaker at 180 rpm, at 28°C
14 in the dark. The next day, 250 µL of the overnight culture was grown in 100 mL of LB with 25 mg/L
15 rifampicin, in a 1 L Erlenmeyer flask, on a rotary shaker at 180 rpm, 28°C in the dark until OD₆₀₀
16 reached approximately 0.8. The culture was then transferred to two 250-mL centrifuge bottles,
17 chilled on ice for 10 minutes and centrifuged at 4°C, 3000 x g for 30 minutes (Avanti J-30 I centrifuge,
18 Beckman Coulter). The resulting bacterial pellets were gently resuspended in 1 mL of chilled filter-

1 sterilised 20 mM CaCl₂, and 50 µL aliquots were quickly dispensed into pre-chilled sterile 1.5-mL
2 tubes. The tubes were snap-frozen in liquid nitrogen and then stored at -80°C.

3 **4.2.3.2 Delivery of the CRISPR/Cas9 vectors into competent cells of *A. tumefaciens***

4 A 50 µL aliquot of competent cells stored at -80°C was thawed on ice, and 350 ng of the CRISPR/Cas9
5 vector was added and mixed by gently stirring with a pipette tip. The mixture was incubated on ice
6 for 20 minutes, then at 37°C for 5 minutes and back on ice for another 2 min. The cells were then
7 grown in 700 µL LB medium in a sterile 10 mL tube on a rotary shaker at 180 rpm, 28°C in the dark.
8 After three hours, 200 µL of culture was plated on LB agar supplemented with 25 mg/L rifampicin
9 and 50 mg/L kanamycin. The plates were kept in the dark at 28°C for two to three days to facilitate
10 the growth of bacterial colonies. Individual colonies were picked and screened for the transformed
11 vector using colony PCR according to section 3.2.4.2, with the primer pair FGC-F and FGC-R or
12 FN117-F and FN117-R (Table 4-2). The PCR-positive colonies were grown overnight in 5 mL LB
13 medium supplemented with 25 mg/L rifampicin and 50 mg/L kanamycin at 180 rpm and 28°C in the
14 dark. A 500 µL aliquot of this culture was mixed with 500 µL of sterile 50% glycerol in a 2-mL tube
15 and stored at -80°C for future use.

16 **4.2.4 Transformation of leaf discs with *A. tumefaciens* harbouring the CRISPR/Cas9 vector**

17 **4.2.4.1 Preparation of leaf discs**

18 Leaf disc explants used for plant transformation were obtained from potato plants growing in soil in
19 a growth chamber. The potting mix was prepared by mixing 40 kg of soil, 20 g of dolomite, 15 g of
20 CaCO₃, 40 g of wetting agent, 40 g of Osmocote® all-purpose fertiliser with 5 L of water and steam-
21 pasteurised before use. Two-week-old *in vitro* potato plantlets were transferred to soil and covered
22 with clear plastic for five days for acclimatisation. The plantlets were grown in a growth chamber at
23 30°C and under a 16h light/ 8h dark photoperiod for at least four weeks before leaf harvesting.
24 Approximately 10 to 15 fully expanded leaves were detached from plants and left under running

1 water in a container covered with a muslin cloth for 15 minutes. Finally, all the water was drained,
2 and leaves were transferred into a sterile glass beaker (1 L) in a laminar flow cabinet.

3 The leaves were decontaminated by surface sterilisation by incubating in 70% ethanol for 30 seconds
4 with gentle swirling. Ethanol solution was decanted, and leaves were washed with sterile water,
5 followed by a 40-s incubation in 250 mL of 1 % sodium hypochlorite solution containing three drops
6 of Tween-20. The solution was decanted, and leaves were washed with 500 mL of sterile water with
7 gentle swirling. The leaves were washed four times with sterile water with two-minute incubation
8 and occasional swirling during each wash. After the final wash, water was decanted, and the leaves
9 were kept in sterile water until further processing. Leaf discs were prepared by placing them in a
10 stack and punching with a sterile cork borer (0.7 cm in diameter). Leaf discs were kept in liquid MS
11 until used for *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation.

12 **4.2.4.2 *A. tumefaciens*-mediated plant transformation**

13 *A. tumefaciens* harbouring the CRISPR/Cas9 vector was prepared a few days before plant
14 transformation. Bacterial glycerol stock was streaked on solid LB medium supplemented with 25
15 mg/L rifampicin and 50 mg/L kanamycin and incubated in the dark at 28°C for three days. Two days
16 before transformation, a single colony was grown overnight in 5 mL of LB broth with the same
17 antibiotics, in a 28-mL glass bottle, at 28°C while shaking at 250 rpm. The second culture was started
18 by adding 100 µL of the first culture in 60 mL of LB broth, 100 µM of acetosyringone, 25 mg/L
19 rifampicin and 50 mg/L kanamycin, in a 250-mL glass bottle with a screw cap (Schott Duran), at 28°C,
20 250 rpm, in the dark overnight until OD₆₀₀ reached 0.8. The bacterial culture was transferred to two
21 50-mL conical centrifuge tubes, and pellets were collected by centrifugation at 3000 x g for 15
22 minutes. The pellets were gently resuspended in 60 mL of liquid MS with 30 g/L sucrose, pH 5.6 and
23 100 µM acetosyringone.

24 During the transformation process using pcoCas9-g4g7 and pcoCas9-g67g10 vectors, leaf discs of
25 each cultivar were immersed in bacterial suspension for 15 to 30 min with gentle shaking. Leaf discs

1 were then blotted on sterile filter paper and embedded on co-cultivation media with the abaxial
2 surface directly in contact with the culture medium in a 90-mm sterile plastic petri dish. Desiree
3 explants were cultured on callus induction medium (CIM) (treatment T5 in chapter 2), while Atlantic
4 explants were cultured on M2 medium (treatment T7 in chapter 2). After two days of co-cultivation,
5 explants were washed once with 200 mg/L timentin in sterile water and rinsed several times with
6 sterile water to remove residual bacteria. Next, explants were blotted on sterile filter paper, and
7 Desiree explants were cultured on CIM supplemented with 200 mg/L timentin and 0.5 mg/L
8 glufosinate-ammonium. Atlantic explants were cultured on M3 medium (treatment T7 in chapter 2)
9 supplemented with 200 mg/L timentin and 0.5 mg/L glufosinate-ammonium. Atlantic explants were
10 sub-cultured bi-weekly until shoots appeared. Desiree explants were transferred after five days to
11 shoot induction media (SIM) (treatment T5 in chapter 2) and subcultured bi-weekly for shoot
12 induction. Individual shoots were then transferred to the selection medium: Murashige and Skoog
13 basal medium (MS) supplemented with 20 g/L sucrose, 0.5 mg/L glufosinate-ammonium, and
14 solidified with 2.8 g/L Gelrite, pH 5.6. A total of 1,093 Desiree leaf discs were used, and they were
15 divided into four transformation batches with *A. tumefaciens* harbouring pcoCas9-g4g7 vector and
16 four batches with *A. tumefaciens* harbouring pcoCas9-g67g10 vector. Atlantic leaf discs were
17 transformed with pcoCas9-g4g7 in 11 transformation batches and pcoCas9-g67g10 in five batches
18 with a total of 2,031 leaf discs. All transformation batches had 15 explants as the control for each
19 batch, which were incubated in MS liquid medium, pH 5.6 instead of the bacterial suspension.

20 Transformation with *A. tumefaciens* harbouring pFGC-ASVI and pFN117-ASVI vectors was done with
21 a few modifications. Leaf discs were immersed in bacterial suspension for one hour in the dark on a
22 rocker at the lowest speed, then blotted on sterile filter paper and cultured on Murashige and Skoog
23 basal medium with Gamborg vitamins (MSGV, Phytotech Labs) supplemented with 16 g/L glucose, 5
24 mg/L NAA and 2 mg/L BAP, pH 5.6 (C52 medium). Leaf discs and bacteria were co-cultivated for two
25 days in the dark, and then explants were washed once with 200 mg/L timentin in sterile water,
26 followed by several additional washes with sterile water (until the water became clear). Next,

1 explants were blotted on sterile filter paper, and those that were transformed with pFGC-ASVI
2 vector were cultured on C52 medium supplemented with 200 mg/L timentin and 0.5 mg/L
3 glufosinate-ammonium. Explants transformed with the pFN117-ASVI vector were cultured on C52
4 medium supplemented with 200 mg/L timentin and 50 mg/L kanamycin. After five days, explants
5 were transferred to shoot induction media. Desiree explants were transferred to SIM (treatment T5,
6 see chapter 2) supplemented with 200 mg/L timentin and 0.5 mg/L glufosinate-ammonium (pFGC-
7 ASVI vector) or with 200 mg/L timentin and 50 mg/L kanamycin (pFN117-ASVI vector). Atlantic
8 explants were transferred to petri dishes containing shoot induction medium of treatment S3 (see
9 chapter 2), which was MSGV supplemented with 200 mg/L timentin and 0.5 mg/L glufosinate-
10 ammonium (pFGC-ASVI vector) or with 200 mg/L timentin and 50 mg/L kanamycin (pFN117-ASVI
11 vector). All explants were subcultured every two weeks until shoots appeared. For root induction,
12 single shoots were transferred to selection media in 250 mL tissue culture containers with MS, 20
13 g/L sucrose and corresponding selection agent. These were allowed to grow into plantlets before
14 leaf samples were taken for mutation screening. Regenerated shoots from transformation with
15 pFGC-ASVI vector were cultured on MS supplemented with 20 g/L sucrose and 0.5 mg/L glufosinate-
16 ammonium. Regenerated shoots from transformation with pFN117-ASVI were cultured on MS
17 supplemented with 20 g/L sucrose and 50 mg/L kanamycin. All media were solidified with 2.8 g/L
18 Gelrite (Sigma-Aldrich, Inc) and adjusted to pH 5.6 with 1 M KOH before autoclaving.

19 Transformation with *A. tumefaciens* harbouring pFGC-ASVI vector was done for 156 Atlantic leaf
20 discs and 294 Desiree leaf discs. A total of 925 Atlantic leaf discs and 403 Desiree leaf discs were
21 transformed with *A. tumefaciens* harbouring pFN117-ASVI vector. Sterile plastic petri dishes (90-mm
22 in diameter) were used during co-cultivation, callus induction and shoot regeneration stages. Shoots
23 were cultured in 250-mL sterile, clear round plastic containers with clear screw caps (Labserv).

1 4.2.5 Screening for putative transformants and mutants

2 Putative transgenic events that survived on selection media after two months were transferred to
3 the PC2 glasshouse for tuber formation (see section 6.2.1 of Chapter 6) and subjected to mutation
4 analysis. Leaves from *in vitro* plantlets of corresponding events were used for DNA extraction
5 according to section 3.2.2 of Chapter 3. The integration of the *BlpR* gene in plantlets regenerated
6 from transformation with the pFGC-pcoCas9 vectors (pcoCas9-g67g10, pcoCas9-g4g7, pFGC-ASVI
7 vectors) was confirmed with PCR using BAR-F (5'-CAGATAAAGCCACGCACATTTAGG-3') and BAR-R (5'-
8 CACGGTCAACTTCCGTACC-3') primers (654 bp amplicon). Regenerated plantlets from transformation
9 with pFN117-ASVI vector were screened using the primers FN117-F and FN117-R (Table 4-2, section
10 4.2.2.1 of Chapter 4); the expected amplicon size was 1,120 bp. Three regions of *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes
11 containing four target sites in the PCR-positive transformed plantlets were amplified using
12 corresponding primers listed in Table 4-3. PCR amplification was done in a 10- μ L reaction mix
13 containing 5 μ L of 2X GoTaq[®] Green Master Mix (Promega[®] Corporation), 0.5 μ L of 10 μ M forward
14 primer, 0.5 μ L of 10 μ M reverse primers, 300 ng of genomic DNA and nuclease-free water. The PCR
15 program and gel electrophoresis were done as described in section 3.2.2 of Chapter 3. Amplified
16 DNA fragments of the target regions were used for sequencing to detect putative mutations. The
17 DNA was extracted from agarose gel for sequencing using the centrifugation method. Briefly, the
18 DNA band was cut from the agarose gel and placed on top of the filter inside a 200- μ L filter tip. The
19 tip below the filter was cut off, and the remaining tip with filter and the gel piece was placed in a
20 1.5-mL tube. The tube was centrifuged at maximum speed for 1 min, the filter tip was removed, and
21 the eluate from the filter tip was retained. Four μ L of this DNA eluate was used for sequencing, with
22 the reaction set-up described in section 3.2.5 of Chapter 3. Sequencing results were analysed using
23 Geneious Prime software (Biomatters). PCR products with multiple peaks in the sequencing
24 chromatogram were cloned according to section 3.2.4 of Chapter 3. At least 20 clones were
25 sequenced for each PCR product, and results were analysed on Geneious Prime to assess mutation

1 types. The mutation rate was calculated as the number of plants with gene mutations divided by the
 2 number of plants with the integrated transgene.

3 **Table 4-3. Primers for amplifying guide RNA target regions and amplicon sequencing**

Primer name	Primer sequence (5' to 3')	Target site	Amplicon size	Note
67-F	GGGGAAATATCACATGGGGC	g67 and g10	385 bp	for sequencing
10-R	AGTGCAATACCCGTTTTACCAA			
AS1-F	GGCTTTGTTGGGTTGTTCCGG	g4	191 bp	
4-R	AACCCTTCAATGCACAGACAG			for sequencing
7-F	CCTAACGTGGGATAAGAAATCTCT	g7	407 bp	for sequencing
7-R	GATGTGCCAAGTAAAAATCACCA			

4 **4.2.6 *In silico* protein translation of edited gene sequences**

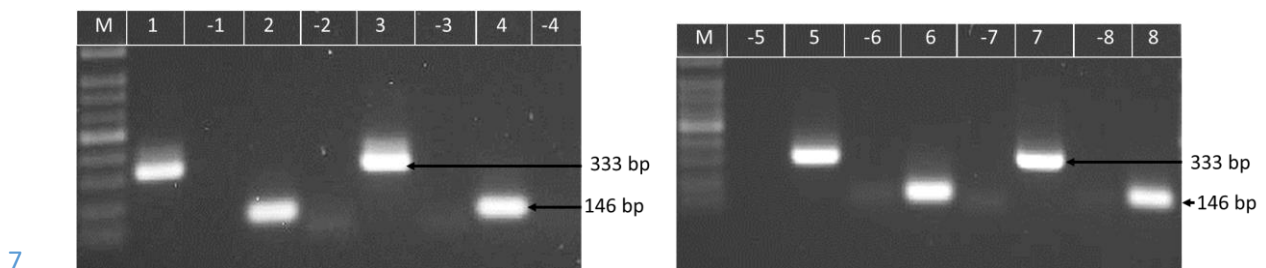
5 Ten transgenic edited events: ALpFN1, ALpFN2, DSpc3, DSpc4, DSpc5, DSpc7, DSpc8, DSpc9,
 6 DSpc12 and DSpFN4 were subjected to *in silico* protein translation to assess putative changes in
 7 their protein sequences. The g67 and g10 target sites on the *Vlnv* gene reference sequence
 8 (accession no. HQ110080.1) were replaced with detected mutations found at corresponding sites in
 9 edited events to generate a complete coding sequence of the mutated allele. Likewise, the g7 target
 10 site on the *AS1* gene reference sequence (accession no. NW_006238977.1:c1565347-1560303) was
 11 replaced with mutations found at this site in edited events. The untranslated regions and introns
 12 were removed from both reference and mutant sequences before *in silico* translation using
 13 Geneious Prime software (Biomatters).

14 **4.3 Results**

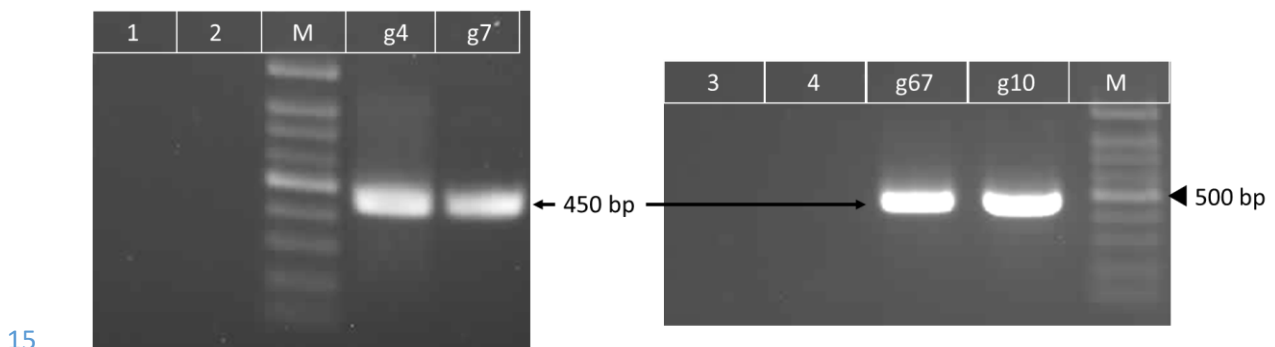
15 **4.3.1 Transformation vectors expressing Cas9 and gRNAs were assembled successfully**

16 After the first round of overlapping PCR, products 1 and 2 of each gRNA expression cassette were
 17 amplified successfully, with the expected amplicon sizes of 333 bp for product 1 and 146 bp for
 18 product 2 (Figure 4-6). Two products were joined in the second PCR round, and the expected 459 bp

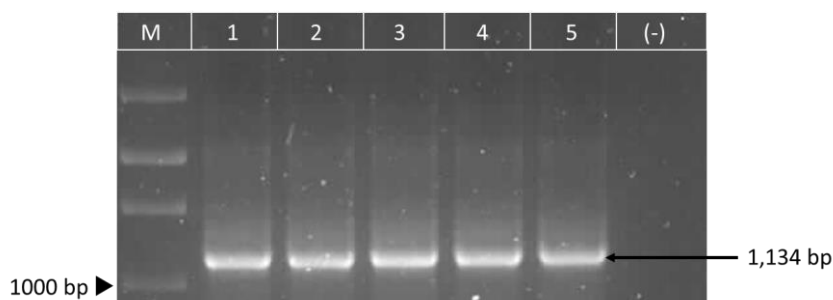
1 amplicon size was obtained (Figure 4-7). Dual-gRNA expression cassettes were made by joining two
 2 gRNA cassettes targeting the same gene (*g4g7* targeting *AS1* gene and *g67g10* targeting *Vlnv* gene).
 3 The insertion and correct sequences of the dual-gRNA cassette in the pFGC-pcoCas9 vector were
 4 confirmed by colony PCR (Figure 4-8) and multiple sequence alignment after sequencing. Similarly,
 5 the insertion of the ASVI construct into pFGC-pcoCas9 and pFN117-Cas9 was also confirmed via
 6 colony PCRs (Figure 4-9), and the sequences were confirmed by sequencing in both directions.



7
 8 **Figure 4-6. Agarose gel electrophoresis image of amplified products from the first PCR round for assembling gRNA expression cassettes.** Lanes 1 and 2: product 1 and 2 of first-round PCR for assembling g4RNA cassette, respectively. Lanes 3 and 4: product 1 and 2 of first-round PCR for assembling g7RNA cassette, respectively. Lanes 5 and 6: product 1 and 2 of first-round PCR for assembling g67RNA cassette, respectively. Lanes 7 and 8: product 1 and 2 of first-round PCR for assembling g10RNA cassette, respectively. Lanes -1 and -8: negative controls of corresponding PCR products. M: 100 bp to 3000 bp DNA ladder.
 9

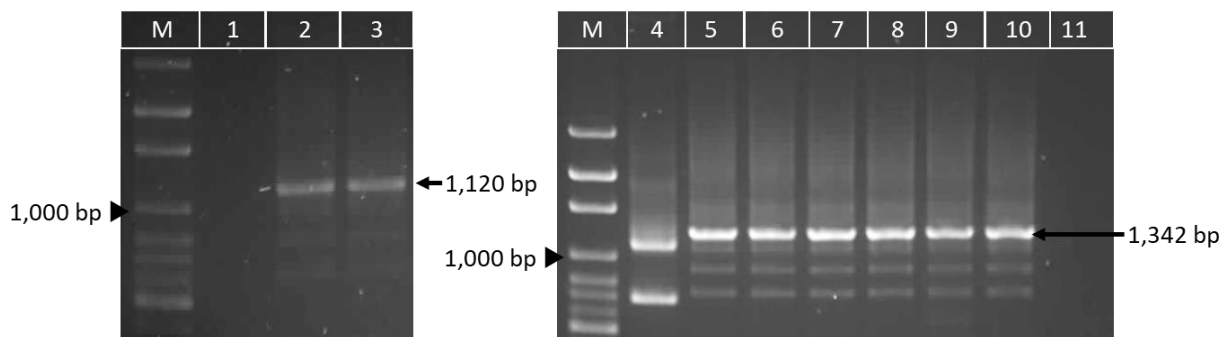


15
 16 **Figure 4-7. Agarose gel electrophoresis image of amplified products from the second PCR round for assembling gRNA expression cassettes.** Lanes *g4*, *g7*, *g67*, *g10*: assembled g4RNA, g7RNA, g67RNA and g10RNA cassettes, respectively, with AtU6-1 promoter, 20-nt of the target sequence and gRNA scaffold in each DNA amplicon. Lanes 1, 2, 3 and 4: negative control for PCR assembling g4RNA, g7RNA, g67RNA and g10RNA, respectively. M: 100 bp to 3000 bp DNA ladder.
 17



1

2 **Figure 4-8. Agarose gel electrophoresis image of amplified products from colony screening PCR for**
 3 **the insertion of the dual-gRNA expression cassette in the vector pFGC-pcoCas9** Lanes 1 and 2:
 amplified PCR products from colonies containing g4g7 dual-gRNA cassette. Lanes 3 to 5: amplified
 PCR products from colonies containing g67g10 dual-gRNA cassette. Lane (-): negative control; M:
 100 bp to 3000 bp DNA ladder.



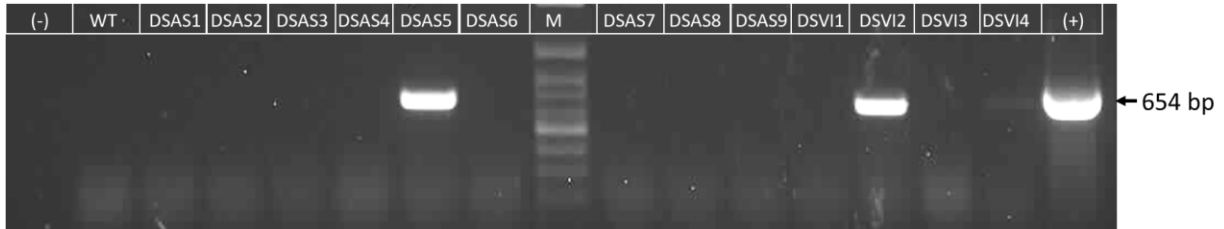
7

8 **Figure 4-9. Agarose gel electrophoresis images amplified products from colony screening PCR for**
 the insertion of the ASVI construct in pFN117-Cas9 and pFGC-pcoCas9 vectors. Lanes 1 and 11:
 negative controls. Lanes 2 and 3: amplified PCR products from colonies containing pFN117-Cas9
 vector harbouring ASVI expression cassette. Lane 4: amplified PCR products from pFGC-g4g7
 plasmid DNA as a positive control. Lanes 5 to 10: amplified PCR products from colonies containing
 pFGC-pcoCas9 vector harbouring ASVI expression cassette. M: 100 bp to 3000 bp DNA ladder.

14 **4.3.2 CRISPR/Cas9-induced mutations in transgenic potato plants**

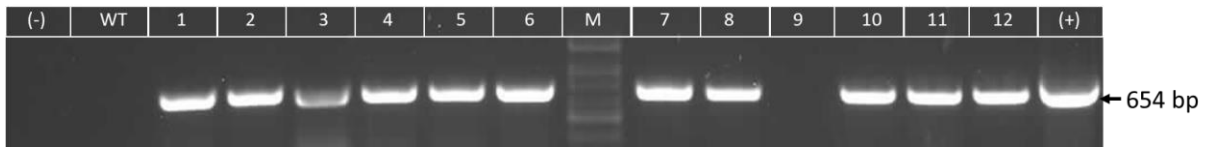
15 Shoot formation was not achieved for Atlantic explants that were transformed with pcoCas9-g4g7
 16 and pcoCas9-g67g10. Atlantic leaf discs formed callus with no further development or
 17 differentiation, and they gradually turned yellow with partial necrosis after two months. In contrast,
 18 Desiree explants displayed better vigour and shoot induction after six weeks of culture on shoot
 19 induction medium with the selection agent. All control samples died within two months on the
 20 selection medium. Nine Desiree shoots were obtained from transformation with pcoCas9-g4g7
 21 (DSAS1 to DSAS9) and four shoots from transformation with pcoCas9-g67g10 (DSVI1 to DSVI4).

1 These shoots were grown to plantlets on the selection medium, and after two months, DNA was
 2 extracted from leaf tissues. PCR screening for the *BlpR* gene resulted in amplification from only two
 3 out of 13 shoots (Figure 4-10). Target gene sites in all 13 shoots were sequenced: no sequence
 4 variations were detected in the multiple sequence alignments with the wildtype sequences.



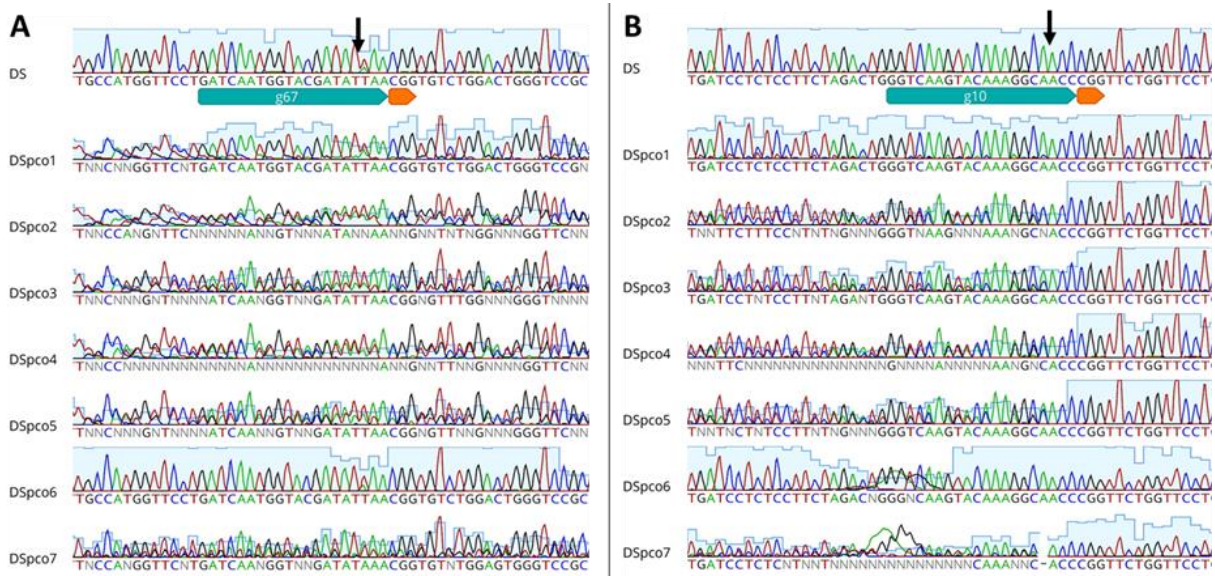
5
 6 **Figure 4-10. Agarose gel electrophoresis images of amplified products from PCR screening for *BlpR***
gene in Desiree wildtype and putative transgenic shoots. Lane (-): negative control, lane WT:
 amplified PCR products from genomic DNA of wildtype Desiree. Lanes DSAS1 to DSAS9: amplified
 PCR products from genomic DNA of regenerated shoots from transformation with pcoCas9-g4g7
 vector. Lanes DSVI1 to DSVI4: amplified PCR products from genomic DNA of regenerated shoots
 from transformation with pcoCas9-g67g10 vector. Lane (+): amplified PCR products from plasmid
 7 DNA of pcoCas9-g4g7 as a positive control, M: 100bp to 3000 bp DNA ladder.

13 The transformation with *A. tumefaciens* harbouring pFGC-ASVI was done once for each potato
 14 cultivar Atlantic and Desiree. After two months on shoot induction medium, shoots were not
 15 obtained for Atlantic, whereas 12 shoots were recovered for Desiree, named as events DSpc01 to
 16 DSpc12. PCR screening for the *BlpR* gene confirmed its presence in 11 out of 12 recovered shoots
 17 (Figure 4-11). Overlapping signals were observed in amplicon sequencing chromatograms of g67,
 18 g10 and g7 target sites of ten out of the 12 shoots, except DSpc01 and DSpc06 (Figure 4-12),
 19 indicating some of the alleles in regenerated events were mutated. Intriguingly, a SNP was detected
 20 at the third base directly upstream of PAM of the g67 target site on the *Vlnv* gene of Desiree (Figure
 21 4-12).



1

2 **Figure 4-11. Agarose gel electrophoresis image of products from PCR screening for the *BlpR* gene**
 3 **in putative transgenic Desiree shoots transformed with the pFGC-ASVI vector.** Lane (-): negative
 control, lane WT: amplified PCR products from genomic DNA of wildtype Desiree. Lanes 1 to 12:
 amplified PCR products from genomic DNA of DSpc01 to DSpc012, respectively. Lane (+): amplified
 PCR products from plasmid DNA of pFGC-ASVI as a positive control, M: 100 bp to 3000 bp DNA
 ladder.

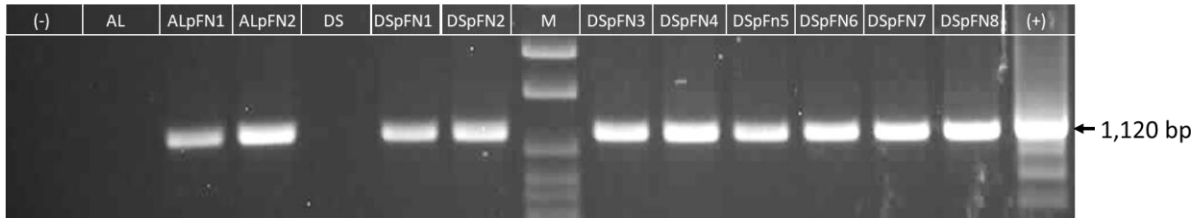


8

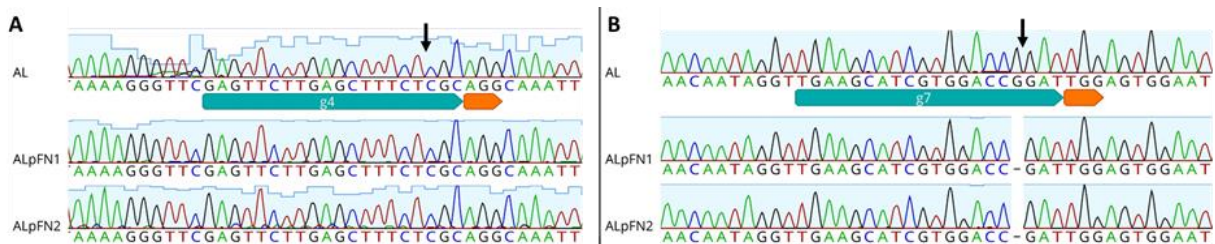
9 **Figure 4-12. Representative chromatograms from direct sequencing of PCR products after**
 10 **amplifying *g67* and *g10* target sites on the *vacuolar invertase* gene of the potato cultivar Desiree**
 11 **transformed with the *A. tumefaciens* harbouring the pFGC-ASVI vector.** (A): Sequence
 chromatogram of the *VInv* amplicon indicating *g67* target site, (B): Sequence chromatogram of the
VInv amplicon indicating *g10* target site. The green arrows indicate gRNA target sites; the orange
 arrows indicate protospacer-adjacent motifs (PAMs). Black arrows point to the expected cleavage
 sites between the fourth and third nucleotide upstream of PAM. DS: sequence from wildtype
 Desiree. DSpc01 to DSpc07: sequences from Desiree transgenic events.

17 Ten shoots were recovered from transformation with *A. tumefaciens* harbouring the pFN117-ASVI
 18 vector. Two were from Atlantic (ALpFN1 and ALpFN2), and eight were from Desiree (DSpFN1 to
 19 DSpFN8). The presence of the ASVI construct in these ten putative transformants were confirmed by
 20 PCR screening for the construct (Figure 4-13). Overlapping signals were observed in sequencing
 21 chromatograms of PCR amplicons containing *g67* and *g10* target sites on the *VInv* gene. There were
 22 no overlapping peaks at the *g7* target site on the *AS1* gene of ALpFN1 or ALpFN2, suggesting that

1 they could be homozygous mutations (Figure 4-14). The sequences containing the g4 target site on
 2 the *AS1* gene of all transgenic shoots were identical to the wildtype sequence. Overall, putative
 3 mutations in both genes were observed for 58% and 100% of recovered shoots from transformation
 4 using pFGC-ASVI and pFN117-ASVI vectors (Table 4-4)



6 **Figure 4-13. Agarose gel electrophoresis image of products from PCR screening for integration of**
 7 **the ASVI construct in recovered shoots from leaf disc explants of potato cultivars Desiree and**
 8 **Atlantic transformed with *A.tumefaciens* harbouring pFN117-ASVI vector.** Lane (-): negative control. AL and DS: amplified PCR products from genomic DNA of wildtype Atlantic and Desiree, respectively. ALpFN1 and ALpFN2: amplified PCR products from genomic DNA of recovered Atlantic shoots. DSpFN1 to DSpFN8: amplified PCR products from genomic DNA of recovered Desiree shoots. Lane (+): amplified PCR products from plasmid DNA of pFN117-ASVI as a positive control. M: 100 bp to 3000 bp DNA ladder.



15 **Figure 4-14. Representative chromatograms from direct sequencing of products after PCR**
 16 **amplification of g4 and g7 target sites for the *asparagine synthetase 1* gene of the potato cultivar**
 17 **Atlantic transformed with the *A.tumefaciens* harbouring pFN117-ASVI vector (A) and (B): g4 and g7**
 target sites on the *AS1* gene of potato cultivar Atlantic, respectively. The green arrows indicate target sites; the orange arrows indicate protospacer-adjacent motifs (PAMs). Black arrows point to the expected cleavage sites between the fourth and third nucleotide upstream of PAM. AL: sequence of wildtype Atlantic. ALpFN1 and ALpFN2: sequence of Atlantic transgenic events.

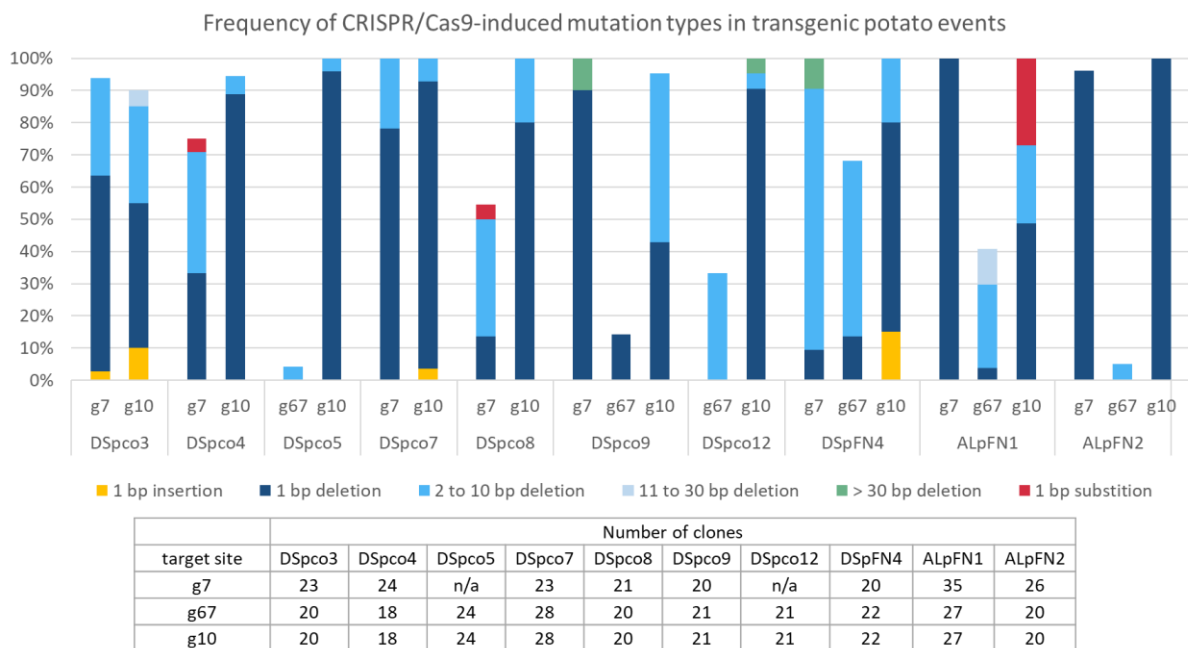
- 1 **Table 4-4. Mutation rates in *vacuolar invertase* and *asparagine synthetase 1* genes of Atlantic and Desiree transgenic edited events.** pFGC-g4g7 and pFGC-g671g0: vectors expressing Cas9 protein and dual-gRNA system. pFGC-ASVI and pFN117-ASVI: vectors expressing Cas9 protein and four gRNAs. *BlpR* gene: gene confers resistance to glufosinate-ammonium. ASVI construct: construct contains four gRNAs with the tRNA processing system. N/A: not applicable. PCR screening for the *BlpR* gene was done for regenerated shoots after transformations with *A.tumefaciens* harbouring pFGC-g4g7, pFGC-g67g10 and pFGC-ASVI vectors. PCR screening for the ASVI construct was done for regenerated shoots after transformation with *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* harbouring pFN117-ASVI vector.
- 2

Potato variety	Vector	Total leaf discs	No. of shoots	<i>BlpR</i> gene-positive shoots	No. of shoots containing ASVI construct	No. of shoots with target gene mutation	No. of shoots with mutation in both target genes
Atlantic	pFGC-g4g7	1,298	0	0	N/A	0	0
	pFGC-g67g10	733	0	0	N/A	0	0
	pFGC-ASVI	156	0	0	N/A	0	0
	pFN117-ASVI	925	2	N/A	2	2/2 (100%)	2/2 (100%)
Desiree	pFGC-g4g7	549	9	1/9	N/A	0/9 (0%)	0/9 (0%)
	pFGC-g67g10	544	4	1/4	N/A	0/4 (0%)	0/4 (0%)
	pFGC-ASVI	294	12	11/12	N/A	10/12 (83%)	7/12 (58%)
	pFN117-ASVI	403	8	N/A	8/8	8/8 (100%)	8/8 (100%)

10 4.3.3 Assessing mutation types and frequencies

11 There was a total of 20 putative mutants generated from transformation with pFN117-ASVI and
 12 pFGC- ASVI vectors. As they were recovered from different transformation batches, there was
 13 variation in their developmental stages. Ten putative mutation events were ready to be transferred
 14 to the PC2 glasshouse for tuber formation during August to December 2020, and these were
 15 subjected to mutation analysis (see Chapter 6). PCR amplicons of the target sites of these ten events
 16 were cloned into pGEM T-easy vector and transformed into *E. coli*, and at least 18 clones were
 17 screened and sequenced (Figure 4-15). Among ten events, two had mutations on the *Vlnv* gene
 18 (Figure 4-15, events DSpco5 and DSpco12), while the rest had mutations on both *Vlnv* and *AS1*

1 genes. A total of 28 PCR amplicons containing target regions (g7, g67 or g10 target sites) of ten
 2 events were cloned and sequenced. Even though direct PCR amplicon sequencing chromatograms
 3 of the g67 target site of all events showed multiple base peaks, potentially indicating the presence of
 4 mutations in the sequences, no mutation was detected at this site for events DSpc3, DSpc4,
 5 DSpc7 and DSpc8 (Figure 4-15). Homozygous mutations were found at the g7 target site of
 6 AlpFN1 and g10 site of AlpFN2, which had the same 1 bp deletion in all examined clones (Figure
 7 4-15). More than four allelic variations were detected at the target site g10 of DSpc3 (1 bp
 8 insertion, 1 bp deletion, 2 to 10 bp deletion and >10 bp deletion) and g67 site of AlpFN1 (1 bp
 9 deletion, 2 to 10 bp deletion, >10 bp deletion, combine mutation and wildtype allele), suggesting that
 10 these events consisted of chimeric cells.



11

Figure 4-15. Frequency of CRISPR/Cas9-induced mutation types in ten transgenic potato events. g7: target site in the *asparagine synthetase 1* gene. g67, g10: target sites in the *vacuolar invertase* gene. DSpc3 to DSpc12: transgenic events generated from potato cultivar Desiree transformed with *A.tumefaciens* harbouring the pFGC-ASVI vector. DSpFN4: transgenic event generated from potato cultivar Desiree transformed with *A.tumefaciens* harbouring the pFN117-ASVI vector. ALpFN1 and ALpFN2: transgenic events generated from potato cultivar Atlantic transformed with *A.tumefaciens* harbouring the pFN117-ASVI vector.

12

1 The highest mutation frequency was recorded for the g10 target site on the *Vlnv* gene sequence
2 (98.19%), followed by the g7 target site (90.63%) on the *AS1* gene and g67 target site (17.19%) on
3 the *Vlnv* gene, no mutation was found at g4 on the *AS1* gene in any tested event (Figure 4-16 A).
4 Deletions accounted for more than half of the induced mutations, at 65.8%. Insertions, substitutions
5 and combination mutations were induced at a much lower frequency, 2.1%, 1.4% and 1.3%,
6 respectively. Approximately one third (33%) of the 634 clones examined, no mutations were
7 detected when compared to the wildtype sequence (Figure 4-16 B). Deletions ranged from 1 bp to
8 35 bp, with 1 bp deletions being the most common among mutated sequences (68.53%). Insertions
9 and substitutions occurred at a much lower frequency (3.03% for insertion and 0.47% for
10 substitution) and were limited to 1 bp (Figure 4-16 C). Regarding the SNP on the g67 target site of
11 Desiree *Vlnv* gene, 85% (148) of 174 clones had only wildtype sequences; among those, 75% (111
12 clones) had the nucleotide T while 25% (37 clones) had the nucleotide A at the SNP site.

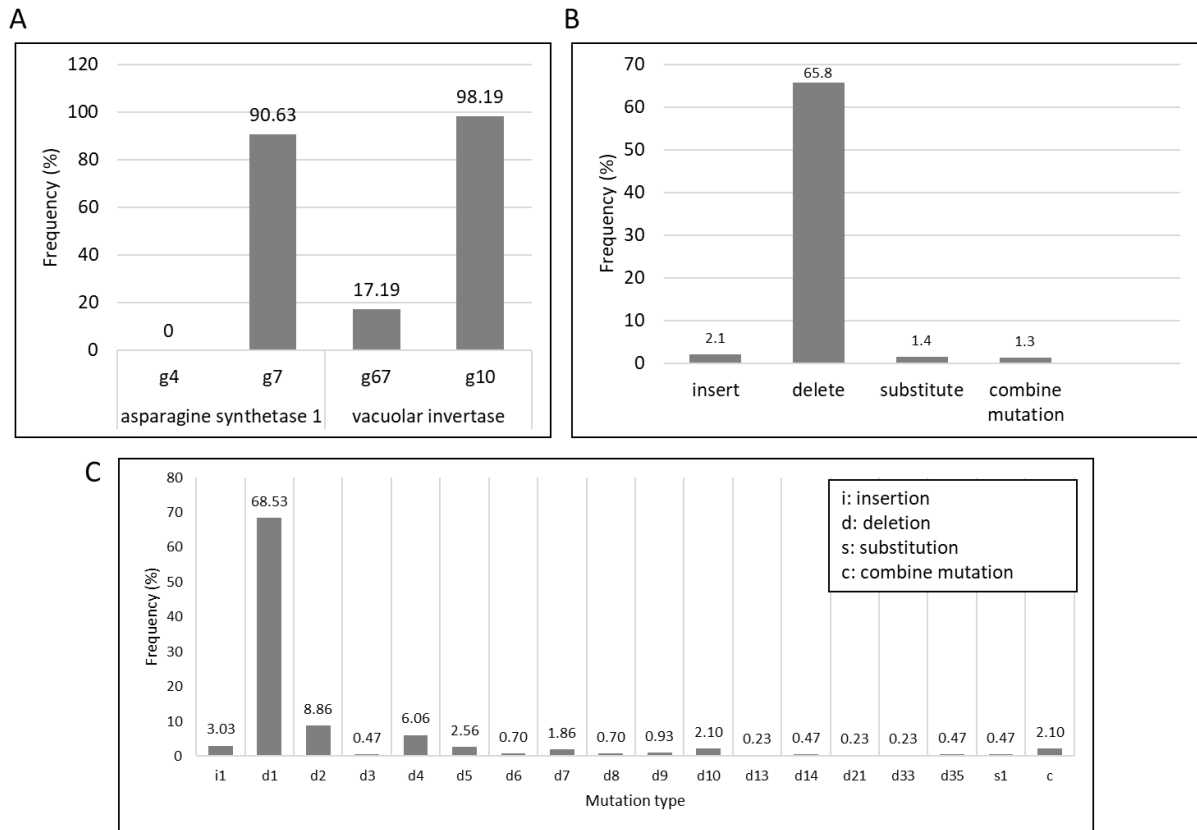


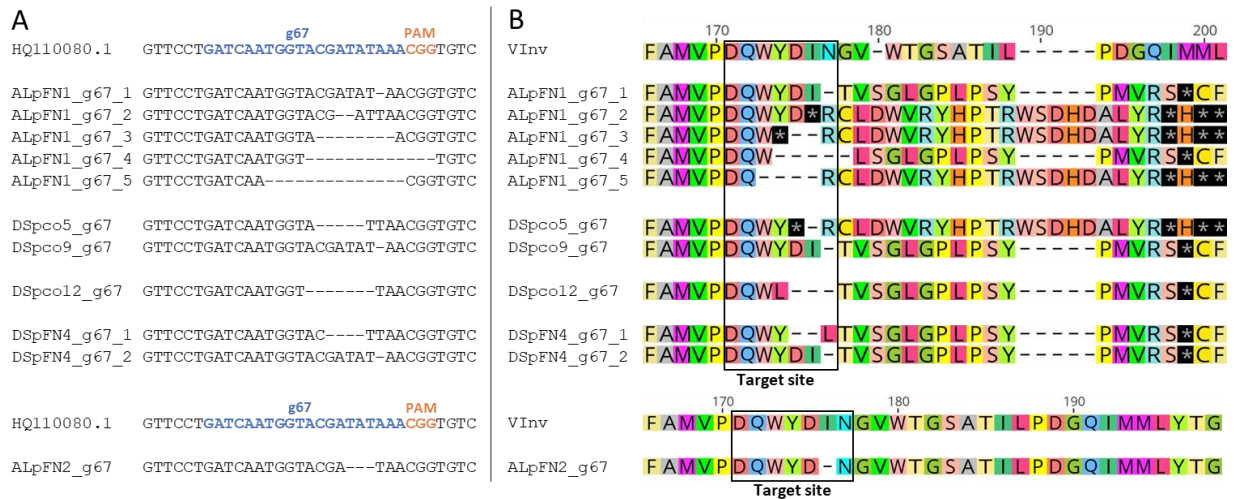
Figure 4-16. CRISPR/Cas9-induced mutation type and frequency. Graph A: Mutation frequency at each target site. Graph B: Frequency of total detected mutation types at the three target sites (g7 on *asparagine synthetase 1* gene, g67 and g10 on *vacuolar invertase* gene). Mutation frequency was calculated as the number of clones with mutations in the sequence divided by the total (634) clones sequenced. Graph C: Type and frequency of the mutations detected. The number after the alphabet at the x-axis indicates the number of edited nucleotides, e.g. i1 indicates one base insertion. The frequency of mutation type was calculated based on the number of clones carrying that type of mutation divided by the total clones with mutations.

10 4.3.4 *In silico* protein translation of edited gene sequences

11 4.3.4.1 *Vacuolar invertase* gene

12 The translated protein sequence of the *VInv* gene (accession no. HQ110080.1) consisted of 639
 13 amino acids. Deletions at the guide g67 target site of events ALpFN1, DSpc05, DSpc09, DSpc12 and
 14 DSpcFN4 resulted in a frameshift, protein sequence changes, and premature stop codons. Stop
 15 codons were generated in all edited alleles of those events within the first 200 amino acids of their
 16 predicted protein sequence (Figure 4-17 B). The three-base deletion at g67 of ALpFN2 did not
 17 generate significant protein sequence changes, except for removing one amino acid (Figure 4-17 B).

1 The translation of edited sequences at the g10 target site revealed that premature stop codons were
 2 generated within the first 270 amino acids in all events (Figure 4-18 B). However, sequences without
 3 premature stop codons were detected in four events: DSpco3, DSpco7, Dspco12 and DSpFN4 (one
 4 sequence in each event); these proteins lost one to 11 amino acids instead (Figure 4-18 B).



5

6 **Figure 4-17. Partial alignment of vacuolar invertase DNA and protein sequences of the reference**
 7 **sequence and edited events with mutations at g67.** (A): Alignment of DNA sequences;
 8 HQ110080.1: accession no of *vacuolar invertase* DNA sequence; g67: target site, blue bases; PAM:
 9 protospacer-adjacent motif, orange bases. (B): Alignment of predicted protein sequences; VInv:
 10 translation of *vacuolar invertase* reference sequence (accession no. HQ110080.1). The solid black
 11 boxes represent stop codons. Sequence name: first two letters indicate the cultivar (AL: Atlantic, DS:
 12 Desiree); the next three letters indicate vector construct (pFN: pFN117-ASVI, pco: pFGC-ASVI), the
 13 following number indicates an individual event, g67: target site and last number indicates the
 14 number of edited alleles.



1
2 **Figure 4-18. Partial alignment of vacuolar invertase DNA and protein sequences of the reference**
3 **sequence and edited events with mutations at g10.** (A): Alignment of DNA sequences;
4 HQ110080.1: accession no of *vacuolar invertase* reference sequence; g10: target site, in blue; PAM:
5 protospacer-adjacent motif, in orange. (B): Alignment of predicted protein sequences; VInV:
6 translation of *vacuolar invertase* reference sequence (accession no. HQ110080.1). The solid black
7 boxes represent stop codons. Sequences with highlighted names do not contain premature stop
8 codons. Sequence name: first two letters indicate the cultivar (AL: Atlantic, DS: Desiree); the next
9 three letters indicate CRISPR/Cas9 construct (pFN: pFN117-ASVI, pco: pFGC-ASVI), the following
10 number indicates an individual event, g10: target site, and last number indicates the number of
11 edited alleles.

12 **4.3.4.2 Asparagine synthetase 1 gene**

13 The predicted AS1 protein sequence translated from the reference DNA sequence (accession no.
14 NW_006238977.1:c1565347-1560303) had 590 amino acids. Premature stop codons were
15 generated within the first 55 amino acids in all events containing mutations at g7 (Figure 4-19),
16 suggesting the interruption of the AS1 protein sequence and its activity in those events. Two alleles
17 of DSpco3, one allele of DSpco8 and one allele of DSpFN4 did not have a premature stop codon in
18 their translation sequence, but one or two amino acids were removed (Figure 4-19 B).

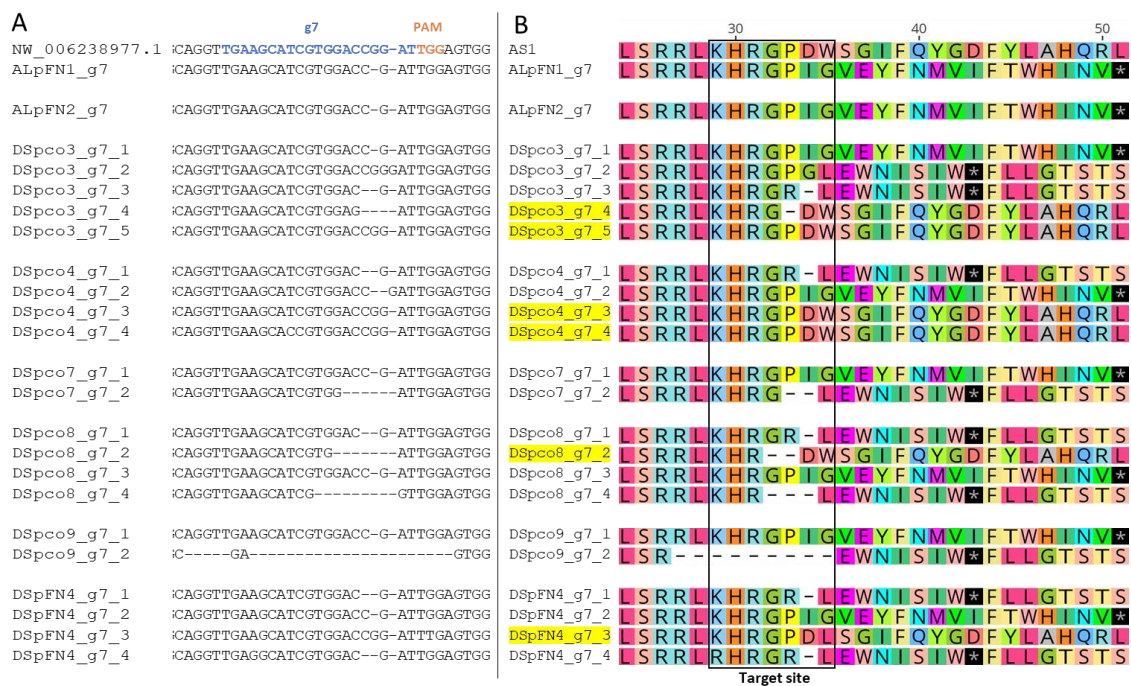


Figure 4-19. Partial alignment of asparagine synthetase 1 DNA and protein sequences of the reference sequence and edited events with mutations at g7. (A): Alignment of DNA sequences; NW_006238977.1: accession no of reference sequence; g7: target site, blue; PAM: protospacer-adjacent motif, in orange. (B): Alignment of predicted protein sequences; AS1: translation of *asparagine synthetase 1* reference sequence (accession no. NW_006238977.1). The solid black boxes represent stop codons. Sequences with highlighted names do not contain premature stop codons. Sequence name: first two letters indicate the cultivar (AL: Atlantic, DS: Desiree); the next three letters indicate CRISPR/Cas9 construct (pFN: pFN117-ASVI, pco: pFGC-ASVI), the following number indicates an individual event, g10: target site, and last number indicates the number of edited alleles.

4.4 Discussion

CRISPR/Cas9-induced mutations with up to 100% frequency were achieved in both the *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes in regenerated transgenic Desiree and Atlantic potato shoots. However, the mutation frequency varied significantly between the target sites, from no mutation at the g4 target site to 98.19% at the g10 target site. The variability of mutation efficiency has been studied to determine the controlling factors, although there is no clear explanation. For example, the presence of a thiamine (T) base within the four bases proximal to PAM, especially as the last base before PAM, is disfavoured by Cas9 (Xu et al., 2015). This finding seems to be true in the case of g67 (5'-GATCAATGGTACGATATTA-3') and g4 (5'-GAGTTCTTGAGCTTTCTCGC-3') target sites which have a T base at the fourth position upstream of the PAM, but this was contradictory for the g7 (5'-

1 TGAAGCATCGTGGACCGGAT-3') target site, which has a T base at the 3'-end of the target sequence.
2 On the other hand, cytosine (C) before PAM is also reported to be unfavourable for Cas9 binding
3 ([Doench et al., 2014](#)). Again, a contradictory result was obtained as both g10 and g4 target sites
4 have a C nucleotide at the end of the sequence; only g4 resulted in no mutation, while g10 resulted
5 in 98.19% mutation efficiency. Most of the studies on the effectiveness of gRNA have been from
6 studies on animal cells; thus, it may not be entirely applicable for plant cells. The g4 target site
7 effectively guided Cas9 to cleave the *AS1* gene fragment *in vitro* (see section 3.3.3 of Chapter 3);
8 thus, the presence of T as the fourth base and C as the last base before PAM may not be the reason
9 for low efficiency as Cas9 still bound to this gRNA. A possible explanation for the low expression of
10 g4RNA is due to the T-rich (eight Ts) sequence in the g4 target site, which could cause low expression
11 of gRNA ([Xu et al., 2015](#)).

12 Unlike the g4 target site, the low mutation rate at the g67 target site was probably caused by the
13 SNP in the target sequence. The SNP at the g67 target site of potato cultivar Desiree was not
14 discovered during the initial sequencing when six clones were screened to assess the allelic variation
15 present. It may be due to TA cloning bias, where a particular SNP will be picked up at a higher rate
16 than another ([Veillet et al., 2020](#)). This SNP is located within the seed sequence of the target site,
17 which is the 12th nt directly upstream of PAM. This SNP's location was also on the third base
18 upstream of PAM, where the cleavage site of Cas9 is. Hence, the effectiveness of CRISPR/Cas9-
19 induced DNA DSBs at the g67 target site might be affected by the mismatches at that SNP, as the
20 seed sequence is known to be crucial for Cas9 recognition, binding and cleavage activity ([Zheng et](#)
21 [al., 2017](#)).

22 Large deletions between two target sites on the same gene have been reported in the Arabidopsis
23 *phytoene desaturase* gene ([Li et al., 2013](#)), chromosome 2 of *Japonica* rice ([Zhou et al., 2014](#)),
24 tomato *argonaute 7* gene ([Brooks et al., 2014](#)) and recently in potato *granule bound starch synthase*
25 *I* gene ([Veillet et al., 2019a](#)). The distance between two target sites can be as small as 24 bp ([Li et al.,](#)

1 [2013](#)) to larger than 100 kb ([Zhou et al., 2014](#)). The target sites on *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes were selected
2 with 135 bp between the g67 and g10 target sites and 1,163 bp between g4 and g7 target sites (see
3 chapter 3) to facilitate larger deletions. However, the ‘drop-out’ of a genetic fragment between the
4 two target sites was not found in this study. The low or no mutation rate in g67 and g4 greatly
5 reduced the possibility of large DNA fragment deletions that would be between the target sites g67
6 and g10 in the *Vlnv* gene and g4 and g7 target sites in the *AS1* gene.

7 The culture medium used is an important factor in plant transformation as it directly influences the
8 possible number of shoots regenerated. Initially, the culture media of treatment T7 (see chapter 2)
9 were used during the transformation process for the dual-gRNA vector constructs (pFGC-g67g10 and
10 pFGC-g4g7). However, this treatment did not lead to a high shoot induction frequency in Atlantic
11 (approximately 10%, see chapter 2,) and no transgenic shoots were obtained. Consequently, the
12 regeneration of Atlantic was switched to using the optimised media (C52 medium for callus
13 induction and shoot induction medium of treatment S3) with a 64.3% shoot regeneration frequency
14 (see chapter 2), and then two transgenic events were obtained. More transgenic events (18) were
15 obtained from Desiree cultured on regeneration media with a 100% shoot induction rate (treatment
16 T5, chapter 2). From these, 58% to 100% of regenerated shoots were transgenic and contained
17 edited genes. Therefore, improving the shoot induction frequency of Atlantic will undoubtedly
18 increase the chances of obtaining gene-edited events.

19 Regarding promoters driving the expression of Cas9, two vectors were used to express Cas9 and
20 gRNAs in plant cells: pFN117-Cas9 and pFGC-pcoCas9. Expression of the Cas9 coding sequence in
21 the pFGC-pcoCas9 vector was driven by the 35SPPDK promoter (constitutive 35S enhancer fused to
22 the maize C4 pyruvate orthophosphate dikinase basal promoter). The expression of Cas9 in the
23 pFN117-Cas9 vector was driven by a 2X 35S promoter with the addition of tobacco mosaic virus
24 (TMV) omega sequence enhancer, which was expected to increase translation efficiency of Cas9 *in*
25 *vivo*. Plant transformation with the pFN117-ASVI vector derived from pFN117-Cas9 resulted in a

1 higher mutation frequency than in plants with the pFGC-ASVI vector (constructed from pFGC-
2 pcoCas9 vector). Mutated alleles were detected in all regenerants transformed with pFN117-ASVI,
3 while only 83% of transformants with pFGC-ASVI contained mutations. In addition, all edited events
4 transformed with pFN117-ASVI had both *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes mutated; this rate was lower in those
5 from pFGC-pcoCas9, at 58%. These results indicate that the Cas9 expressing cassette with 2X 35S
6 promoter and TMV omega enhancer contributed to increasing the mutation frequency in edited
7 events. Similar observation on the advantages of a translation enhancer was highlighted by ([Kusano](#)
8 [et al., 2018](#)).

9 CRISPR/Cas9-induced mutations in *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes of potato were generated successfully in this
10 chapter, with diverse mutation types and a mutation efficiency of up to 100%. Protein sequence
11 predictions from *in silico* translations revealed potential knockouts for both *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes in
12 edited events and a probable reduction in their protein levels and functionality. It would be possible
13 to generate large gene fragment deletion by grouping the g10 target site in the *Vlnv* gene and the g7
14 target site in *AS1* with new target sites on the corresponding target gene sequence, possibly closer
15 to each other. If sufficient funds were available, the gRNAs/constructs could be synthesised by a
16 commercial provider, which would speed up the research progress. As demonstrated here, with the
17 tRNA processing system, many gRNAs can be introduced into plant cells instead of just two or four to
18 maximise the chances of inducing desired mutations.

Chapter 5

Gene editing with CRISPR/Cas9 via PEG-mediated protoplast transfection and RNP-particle bombardment

1 **5.1 Introduction**

2 CRISPR/Cas9 is a gene-editing method that employs site-directed nuclease (SDN) technology and is
3 now widely used to edit a range of plant species. The gene edits or mutations resulting from this
4 technology are classified as follows - SDN-1: the introduction of insertions or deletions (e.g. single
5 point mutations) without introduced DNA, SDN-2: short insertion of a few base pair using an
6 oligonucleotide DNA template, and SDN-3: longer insertion bases, up to a complete gene, using an
7 introduced DNA template ([Menz et al., 2020](#)). Several countries have adopted this classification to
8 regulate products derived from SDN technology. The edited plants obtained through SDN-1
9 mutations without external genetic material integrated into their genome are not classified as GMOs
10 in America, Argentina, Australia, Brazil, Canada, Israel and Japan ([Menz et al., 2020](#), [Gupta et al.,
11 2021](#)), with other countries considering to adopt this approach. The generation of transgene-free
12 gene-edited potato plants of existing cultivars requires the CRISPR/Cas9 system to be used as a
13 ribonucleoprotein complex (RNP) instead of using transformation vectors. Unlike wheat or other
14 crop plants, potato is highly heterozygous, making it impossible to backcross transgenic potato to
15 obtain null segregant as this will remove the unique genetic combination of the given potato variety.
16 The use of the RNP complex can avoid the transgene introduction into the potato genome. This
17 complex can be delivered into plant cells either by PEG-mediated protoplast transfection or particle
18 bombardment approach.

19 Direct delivery of RNPs has been achieved for some model and crop plant species, including
20 Arabidopsis, tobacco, lettuce, rice, maize, wheat, tomato and potato ([Woo et al., 2015](#), [Svitashev et
21 al., 2016](#), [Liang et al., 2017](#), [Andersson et al., 2018](#), [Makhotenko et al., 2019](#), [Veillet et al., 2019b](#),
22 [González et al., 2020](#), [Zhao et al., 2021](#)). Protoplast transfection of RNPs is the only delivery method
23 reported for potato, and the highest mutation efficiency was 72% ([Zhao et al., 2021](#)). Biolistic
24 bombardment with RNPs has been tested in other crop plants, and with variable editing efficiency:

1 up to 47% efficiency was achieved in maize ([Svitashev et al., 2016](#)) while only 0.56% to 4.2% was
2 reported for wheat ([Liang et al., 2017](#), [Imai et al., 2020](#)).

3 In this chapter, RNP complexes of Cas9 and four gRNAs were delivered into potato leaf disc-derived
4 calli or leaf tissue via particle bombardment to generate transgene-free gene-edited plants. The
5 protoplast transfection method from an established protocol by [Nicolia et al. \(2015\)](#) was tested with
6 plasmid DNA to lay out a foundation for delivering RNPs into potato protoplasts.

7 **5.2 Methodology**

8 **5.2.1 Protoplast transfection assay**

9 **5.2.1.1 Preparation of media and solutions**

10 Media and solutions for protoplast isolation and transfection were prepared according to [Nicolia et](#)
11 [al. \(2015\)](#) with modifications. The 10X base solution contained 1.9 g/L KNO₃, 0.44 g/L CaCl₂, 0.37 g/L
12 mg MgSO₄·7H₂O and 0.17 g/L KH₂PO₄. The iron stock solution contained 1.9 g/L FeSO₄·7H₂O and 1.4
13 g/L Na₂EDTA in Milli-Q water. The 10X macro stock solution contained 74 g/L KNO₃, 49.2 g/L
14 MgSO₄·7H₂O and 3.4 g/L KH₂PO₄. The 1000X micro stock contained 1.5 g/L H₃BO₃, 5 g/L MnSO₄·H₂O,
15 1 g/L ZnSO₄·7H₂O, 0.12 g/L Na₂MoO₄·2H₂O, 0.012 g/L CuSO₄·5H₂O, 0.012 g/L CoCl₂·6H₂O and 0.38 g/L
16 KI. The 200X vitamins stock was made with 0.5 g/L pantothenic acid, 0.5 g/L choline chloride, 1 g/L
17 ascorbic acid, 0.01 g/L p-aminobenzoic acid, 0.5 mg/L nicotinic acid, 0.5 g/L pyridoxine-HCl, 5 g/L
18 thiamine-HCl, 0.2 g/L folic acid, 0.005 g/L biotin, 0.01 g/L cyanocobalamin, 0.005 g/L cholecalciferol.
19 The 50X organic acid stock contained 1 g/L pyruvic acid, 2 g/L fumaric acid, 2 g/L citric acid
20 monohydrate and 2 g/L DL-malic acid. Sugar stock contained 6.25 g/L sorbitol, 6.25 g/L sucrose, 6.25
21 g/L fructose, 6.25 g/L ribose, 6.25 g/L xylose, 6.25 g/L mannose, 6.25 g/L rhamnose monohydrate,
22 6.25 g/L cellobiose and 2.5 g/L myo-inositol. All solutions were prepared in Milli-Q water, filter-
23 sterilised and stored at 4°C, except for the vitamin stock stored at -20°C.

1 Medium E was prepared by mixing 1X macro stock, 0.147 g/L $\text{CaCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$, 10 mL/L iron stock, 1X
2 micro stock, 1X vitamins stock, 20 mL/L sugar stock, 1X organic acids stock, 0.5 g/L casein
3 hydrolysate, 33.7 g/L glucose, 30.92 g/L mannitol, 1 g/L BSA (bovine serum albumin), 1 mg/mL
4 thiamine HCl, 2 mg/mL zeatin riboside and 2 mg/mL 2,4-D in Milli-Q water. pH was adjusted to 5.6
5 with 1 M KOH and the medium was filter sterilised and then stored at 4°C.

6 Alginate solution was made by dissolving 28 g/L alginic acid-Na salt and 72.88 g/L sorbitol in Milli-Q
7 water followed by autoclaving. The floating solution was prepared by dissolving 72.88 g/L sorbitol
8 and 7.351 g/L $\text{CaCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ in Milli-Q water; the solution was then filter-sterilised. Both alginate and
9 the floating solution were kept at 4°C after sterilisation. Setting agar was prepared in two steps:
10 72.88 g/L sorbitol and 8 g/L agar were dissolved in Milli-Q water and autoclaved; 7.351 g/L
11 $\text{CaCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ was dissolved in Milli-Q water, filter-sterilised and then combined with the autoclaved
12 sorbitol + agar solution before pouring a 0.5 cm layer into a 50-mL sterile plastic container.

13 PEG (polyethylene glycol) solution was freshly prepared on transfection day at 25% concentration by
14 dissolving 250 g/L PEG 4000, 72.8 g/L mannitol, and 328.16 g/L $\text{Ca}(\text{NO}_3)_2$ in Milli-Q water.

15 Transformation buffer 1 (TB1) was made by dissolving 34.6 g/L mannitol, 14.68 g/L $\text{CaCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ and 5
16 g/L MES (morpholinoethane sulfonic acid) in Milli-Q water; pH was adjusted to 5.6. Transformation
17 buffer 2 (TB2) was made by dissolving 91 g/L mannitol, 3.04 g/L $\text{MgCl}_2 \cdot 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ and 1 g/L MES in Milli-Q
18 water, pH 5.6. All solutions were filter-sterilised, TB1 and TB2 were stored at 4°C.

19 **5.2.1.2 Protoplast isolation from leaves**

20 Protoplasts were isolated from *in vitro* leaves, according to the protocol of [Nicolia et al. \(2015\)](#) with
21 modifications. About 20-25 fully expanded leaves (1 g) of Desiree or Atlantic were detached from 4-
22 to 6-week-old *in vitro* plantlets, cut into thin strips using a sharp blade in sterile MS solution
23 supplemented with 20 g/L sucrose, pH 5.6. The strips were incubated in freshly prepared 60 mL of
24 plasmolysis solution (0.5 M sorbitol, filter-sterilised) for 30 minutes in the dark. Leaf strips were
25 then transferred into freshly prepared 15 mL digestion solution (1X base solution, 37.35 g/L

1 mannitol, 0.87 g/L CaCl₂, 10 g/L cellulase RS (Yakult Pharmaceutical Industry Co.), 2 g/L macerozymes
2 (Yakult Pharmaceutical Industry Co.), filter-sterilised into a 50-mL centrifuge tube). The tube was
3 wrapped in aluminium foil and kept on a rocker at the lowest speed for three to four hours at room
4 temperature.

5 After digestion, a sieve with 0.38 µM aperture was pre-wetted with wash solution (0.45 M mannitol,
6 autoclaved), the solution containing isolated protoplasts was filtered through the sieve (solution 1).
7 The sieve was then washed with 5 mL wash solution (solution 2). The two filtered solutions
8 (solutions 1 and 2) were combined and divided into four 5-mL portions into four 10-mL conical
9 centrifuge tubes. The tubes were centrifuged at 70 x g for 5 min (minimum acceleration and
10 deceleration) at room temperature. The liquid supernatant was discarded, protoplast pellets were
11 gently resuspended in 2.5 mL of 20% sucrose by gentle flicking, and protoplast suspensions from two
12 tubes were combined into one. One millilitre of autoclaved 0.3 M KCl was carefully layered on top of
13 the sucrose-protoplast suspension, and care was taken not to mix the two solutions. The tubes were
14 centrifuged at 50 x g for 15 min (minimum acceleration and deceleration) at room temperature. A
15 thick band of protoplasts formed at the KCl and sucrose solution interface which was carefully
16 collected by pipetting and transferred into a new 10-mL conical centrifuge tube containing 3 mL of
17 wash solution. The mixture was topped up to 7 mL with wash solution and centrifuged at 70 x g for
18 5 min (minimum acceleration and deceleration). The liquid supernatant was discarded, protoplasts
19 were gently resuspended in 1 mL of medium E (for regeneration), or 3 mL of TB1 (for transfection)
20 and solutions from two tubes were combined into one. A 15-µL of the protoplast-containing
21 solution was used for quantifying protoplast density using a haemocytometer, and the remaining
22 protoplasts were kept at 4°C in the dark during counting.

23 After counting, protoplasts were either used for transfection or cultured for regeneration. For
24 regeneration, protoplast density was adjusted to 1.6 x 10⁵/mL with either medium E or medium E
25 mixed with alginate solution at a 1:1 ratio to create alginate lenses. Protoplasts in medium E were

1 transferred to a 5-cm diameter glass petri dish and kept at 22°C in the dark. The protoplasts
2 resuspended in medium E with alginate solution were gently dropped on setting agar using a 1000-
3 mL pipette tip and allowed to set at room temperature. Two millilitres of the floating solution were
4 then added to release the alginate lens containing protoplasts from setting agar, and the lenses were
5 transferred to a sterile 5-cm diameter glass petri dish containing medium E. The protoplasts were
6 kept in the dark at 22°C and medium E was replaced bi-weekly.

7 **5.2.1.3 PEG-mediated protoplast transfection with plasmid DNA**

8 The tube containing protoplasts in TB1 was centrifuged at 50 x *g* for 10 min (minimum acceleration
9 and deceleration). TB1 solution was discarded, and the concentration of protoplasts was adjusted to
10 1.6×10^6 by adding TB2. For every transfection, 100 μL of protoplasts (approximately 160,000
11 protoplasts) was added to a 10-mL conical centrifuge tube, followed by 10 μg of plasmid DNA
12 (pFN117-ASVI vector), and one volume (110 μL to 140 μL , depending on the volume of added
13 plasmid DNA) of 25 % PEG 4000 solution was added and gently mixed by flicking. After incubation
14 for three minutes at room temperature, transfection was stopped by adding 5 mL of wash solution.
15 The protoplasts were collected by centrifugation at 50 x *g* for 5 min (minimum acceleration and
16 deceleration), resuspended in 100 μL of medium E and transferred to a sterile 5-cm diameter glass
17 petri dish. Protoplasts were kept in the dark at 22°C for two days before DNA extraction. The
18 control for PEG-mediated protoplast transfection was also done simultaneously with the same
19 protoplast quantity, plasmid DNA and transfection conditions but without PEG.

20 **5.2.1.4 DNA extraction and molecular analysis of transfected protoplasts**

21 After two days, transfected protoplasts in medium E were transferred to a 1.5-mL tube and
22 centrifuged at maximum speed for 5 min. Medium E was discarded, and protoplasts were washed
23 by adding 500 μL of wash solution followed by centrifugation at maximum speed for five min. Wash
24 solution was discarded, and protoplasts were frozen in liquid nitrogen before homogenising using a
25 tissue lyser at 22/s frequency for 1.5 min (TissueLyser II, QIAGEN). DNA was extracted from

1 protoplasts following the method described in section 3.2.2 of Chapter 3. The volumes of CTAB,
2 chloroform: isoamyl alcohol (24:1) and ice-cold isopropanol used were adjusted to 300 μ L due to the
3 small sample size. PCR and sequencing of extracted protoplast DNA were done according to section
4 4.2.5 (Chapter 4).

5 **5.2.2 Particle bombardment with RNPs**

6 **5.2.2.1 Preparation of gold particles for bombardment**

7 Gold particles (approximately 0.6 μ m in diameter, Bio-Rad) were freshly prepared before
8 bombardment according to the manual of Biolistic[®] PDS-1000/He Particle Delivery System (Bio-Rad)
9 with minor adjustments. Briefly, for every ten shots with RNPs, 4.5 mg of gold particles were
10 sterilised in 1 mL of 70% ethanol by vigorous vortexing for 5 min. The particles were soaked in 70%
11 ethanol for 15 min before centrifugation at 5,000 rpm for 5 min. The ethanol was discarded, and
12 particles were washed with 1 mL of sterile, nuclease-free water by vortexing for 1 min. The particles
13 were incubated at room temperature for 5 min, centrifuged at 5,000 rpm for 5 min, and the water
14 was removed by pipetting. This washing step was repeated two more times before adding 5 μ L of
15 NEB 3.1 buffer (New England Biolabs) and 45 μ L of nuclease-free water to make 50 μ L solution of the
16 gold particles at 90 mg/mL concentration

17 **5.2.2.2 RNP assembly of Cas9 protein and gRNA**

18 Lyophilised Cas9 protein (Proteowia Pty Ltd) was dissolved in nuclease-free water to make a 1 μ g/ μ L
19 protein solution. All gRNAs were prepared according to section 3.2.7 in chapter 3. The RNP complex
20 was assembled separately for each gRNA (g4 RNA, g7 RNA, g67 RNA and g10 RNA) by mixing 10 μ g of
21 Cas9 protein with 10 μ g of gRNA, 1X of NEB 3.1 buffer and sterile, nuclease-free water in a 50- μ L
22 reaction. The reaction was incubated at 37°C for 15 min in a thermocycler. Then 25 μ L from each
23 RNP reaction was mixed with 50 μ L of gold particles (90 mg/mL), making the final volume 150 μ L and
24 particle density of 30 mg/mL. For each bombardment, 15 μ L of RNP particle solution was spread on
25 the microcarrier and air-dried in a laminar flow hood.

1 **5.2.2.3 Bombardment of RNPs into leaf-derived calli of potato**

2 Leaf discs (0.7 cm in diameter) were prepared according to section 4.2.4.1 (Chapter 4). The discs
3 were cultured on callus induction medium (MSGV + 5 mg/L NAA + 2 mg/L BAP + 16 g/L glucose + 2.8
4 g/L Gelrite, pH 5.6) for five days before bombardment. A group of three callus discs were arranged
5 at the centre of a 90 mm petri dish (without overlapping) containing MS medium supplemented with
6 20 g/L sucrose, 0.2 M mannitol and solidified with 2.8 g/L gelrite, pH 5.6. The explants were
7 bombarded twice with RNP-coated particles at a 9-cm target distance with the BioRad biolistic
8 device using 1,100 psi rupture discs. After bombardment, explants were transferred to callus
9 induction medium for another two days before being transferred to shoot induction medium.
10 Atlantic explants were transferred to MSGV supplemented with 6 mg/L BAP, 5 mg/L GA₃, 16 g/L
11 glucose, pH 5.6 while Desiree explants were transferred to MSGV supplemented with 0.02 mg/L
12 NAA, 0.15 mg/L GA₃, 2.2 mg/L zeatin riboside, 16 g/L glucose, pH 5.6. Regenerated shoots were
13 carefully isolated from calli to avoid selecting clones, and these were cultured on MS with 20 g/L
14 sucrose, pH 5.6 for rooting and development into plantlets.

15 **5.2.2.4 Molecular analysis of regenerated shoots from RNP-treated calli**

16 Leaves of regenerated shoots from RNP-treated explants were used for DNA extraction following the
17 CTAB method described in section 3.2.2 of Chapter 3. PCR and sequencing were performed with
18 primers flanking four target sites as mentioned in section 4.2.5 of Chapter 4. PCR products showing
19 multiple peaks in the sequencing chromatogram were cloned according to section 3.2.4 (Chapter 3).
20 Sequencing results were analysed on Geneious Prime software (Biomatters).

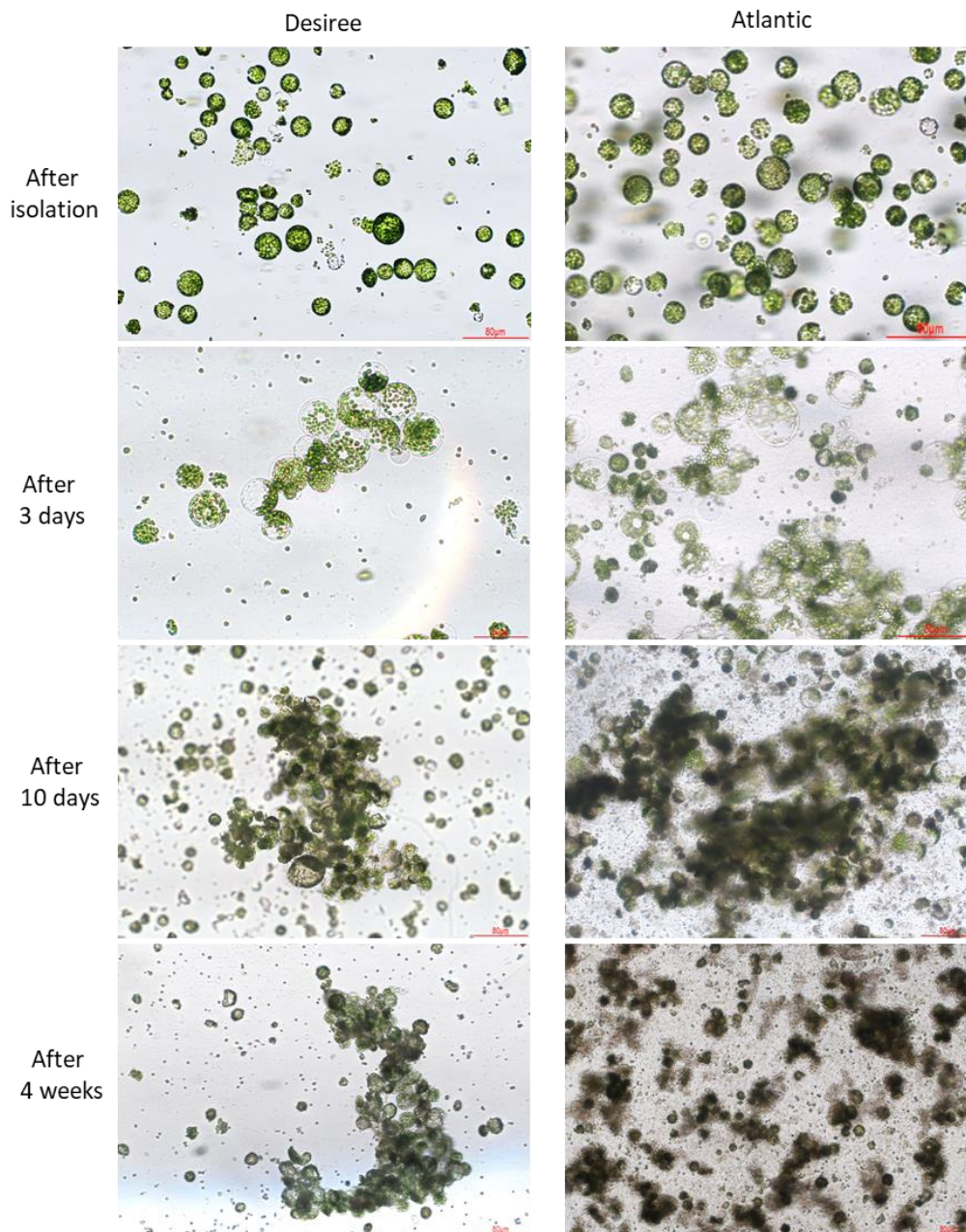
21 The only gene-edited event generated from RNP-particle bombardment was subjected to *in silico*
22 protein translation to access putative changes in its protein sequences. The mutations detected at
23 the g10 target site on the *Vlnv* gene were included in the reference sequence of the corresponding
24 gene (accession no. HQ110080.1), replacing the wildtype target sites. The untranslated regions and

1 introns were removed from both the reference and mutant sequences before translating *in silico*
2 using Geneious Prime software (Biomatters).

3 **5.3 Results**

4 **5.3.1 Protoplast isolation and transfection with plasmid DNA**

5 Protoplasts were isolated from leaves of potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree at an average of 2.35 x
6 10⁵ protoplasts per gram leaf fresh weight. In liquid medium E, protoplasts exhibited no noticeable
7 changes in the first two days after isolation. On the third day, protoplast expansion was observed,
8 and small protoplast groups were formed (Figure 5-1). However, the colour of protoplasts gradually
9 turned from green to a darker colour, and no further change in protoplast shape was observed after
10 ten days (Figure 5-1). In the fourth week, protoplasts from both varieties were deformed and lost
11 their round shape accompanied by the dark colour, and free chloroplasts were seen in the medium
12 as they were released from burst protoplasts (Figure 5-1). The discolouration of protoplasts was also
13 observed in the alginate lenses two weeks post isolation.



1

2 **Figure 5-1. Isolated protoplasts from *in vitro* leaves of potato cultivars Desiree and Atlantic.**

3 Protoplasts were resuspended in liquid medium, and pictures were taken immediately after

4 isolation, three days, ten days and four weeks later.

5 Protoplasts that were transfected with plasmid DNA were subjected to DNA extraction after two

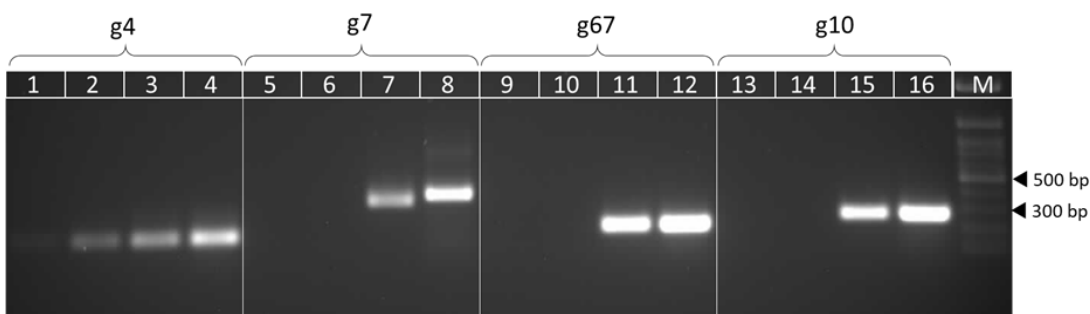
6 days. The limited amount of DNA extracted from transfected protoplasts was only sufficient for PCR

7 amplification of target regions. There was a band in the negative control of PCR amplifying the g4

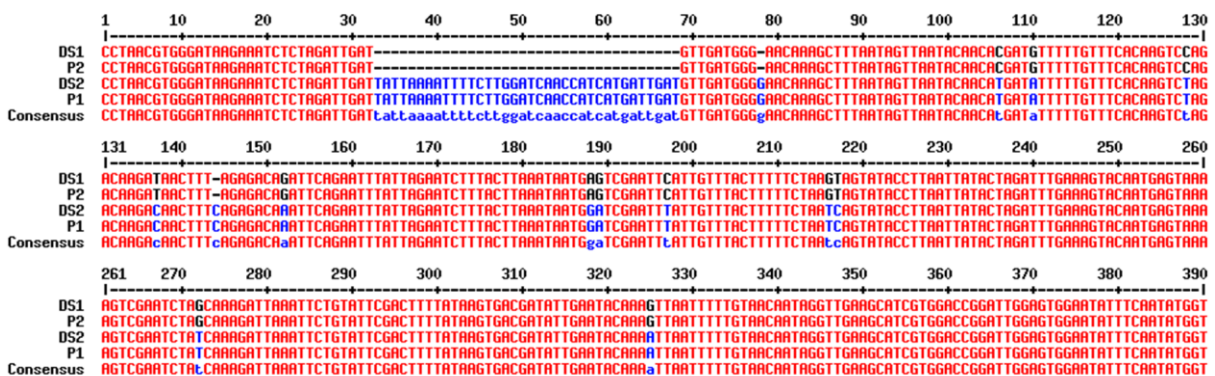
8 target site (lane 1, Figure 5-2), but then it was absent when the negative control was re-run on a

9 different gel, suggesting that the observed contamination was carried over from the adjacent well in

1 the first run. No PCR product was observed for g7, g67 and g10 target site flanking primers from
 2 PEG-DNA transfected protoplast (lanes 6, 10, 14, Figure 5-2). The PCR products amplified from the
 3 control protoplasts appeared to have similar sizes with positive control in g4, g67 and g10, except for
 4 a smaller product for the g7 target site (lanes 7, Figure 5-2). The difference in the size of PCR
 5 products at the g7 target site was analysed by sequencing clones, and it was due to a 36-bp deletion
 6 in one of the wildtype alleles (P2 and DS1, Figure 5-3). On the other hand, no mutation was
 7 detected from direct PCR amplicon sequencing of the g4 target site in transfected protoplasts.



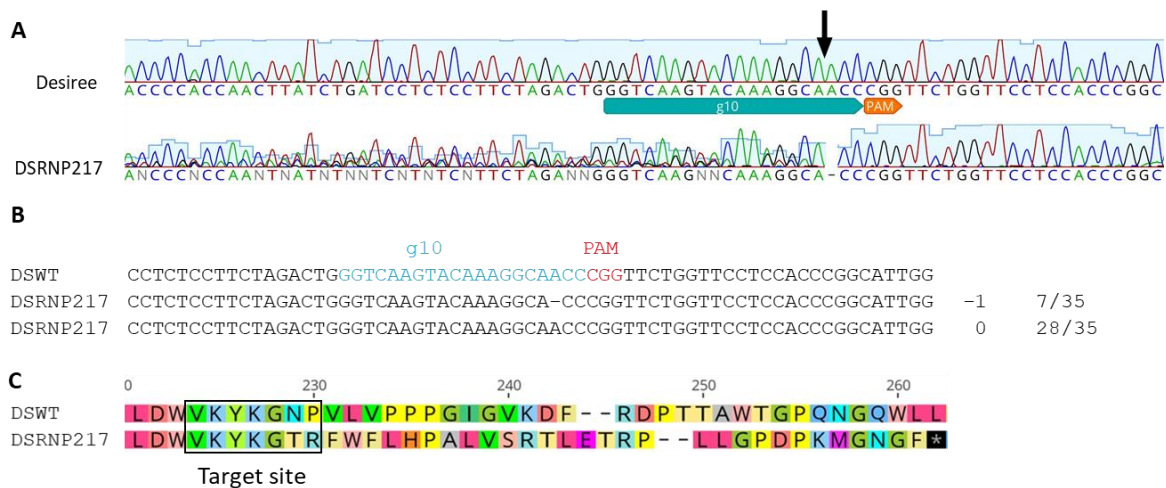
8
 9 **Figure 5-2. Gel electrophoresis of products from PCR amplified target regions in potato cultivar**
 10 **Desiree after protoplast transfection.** g4, g7: Target regions of the *asparagine synthetase 1* gene.
 11 g67, g10: Target regions of the *vacuolar invertase* gene. Lanes no. 1, 5, 9 and 13: Negative controls.
 12 Lanes no. 2, 6, 10 and 14: PCR amplification of DNA extracted from protoplasts transfected with 25%
 13 PEG. Lanes no. 3, 7, 11 and 15: PCR amplification of DNA extracted from protoplasts that were
 14 transfected without PEG. Lanes no. 4, 8, 12 and 16: Positive controls using DNA from Desiree
 15 wildtype. M: 100 – 3000 bp DNA marker.



16
 17 **Figure 5-3. Multiple sequence alignment of g7 target site amplified from DNA of Desiree wildtype**
 18 **and control protoplasts.** DS1 and DS2: Sequences from Desiree wildtype. P1 and P2: Sequences
 19 from transfected Desiree protoplasts. The g7 target site is underlined in blue (from position 347 to
 20 366), and the protospacer adjacent motif (PAM) is underlined in orange (from position 367 to 369).

1 **5.3.2 Particle bombardment with RNP-coated gold particles**

2 A total of 294 pre-cultured leaf disc derived calli were used for particle bombardment with RNPs
 3 (206 explants from Atlantic and 88 from Desiree). Shoots emerged from explants within two weeks
 4 after bombardment, and individual shoots were transferred to fresh media without any selection
 5 agent for rooting. Sequencing results from 343 shoots (166 Atlantic shoots and 227 Desiree shoots)
 6 were analysed and one shoot from Desiree contained a putative mutation, detected from the mixed
 7 signals in its sequencing chromatograms (DSRNP217) (Figure 5-4 A), resulting in an editing efficiency
 8 at 0.4%. Clones of the g10 target site in this event were sequenced, and there was one base deletion
 9 at the fourth position upstream of PAM in g10, which was present in 20% of 35 tested clones (Figure
 10 5-4 B). The translated VINV protein sequence from wildtype is 639 amino acids in length. A pre-
 11 mature stop codon was generated in the first half of the protein sequence translated from the
 12 edited *Vinv* allele in the DSRNP217 event (Figure 5-4 C). No mutation was detected on the other
 13 three target sites after direct PCR amplicon sequencing.



14
 15 **Figure 5-4. PCR amplicon sequencing and *in silico* protein translation of Desiree gene-edited event**
 16 **DSRNP217.** DSRNP217 was generated from potato cultivar Desiree leaf calli bombarded with a
 17 ribonucleoprotein (RNP) complex of Cas9 protein and four gRNAs (g4RNA, g7RNA, g67RNA and
 18 g10RNA). (A): Alignment of PCR amplicon sequences of Desiree wildtype and edited event
 19 DSRNP217. g10: Target site in the *vacuolar invertase* gene. The black arrow indicates the expected
 20 cleavage site. PAM: protospacer-adjacent motif. (B): Mutation analysis of clones sequenced from
 21 the DSRNP217 event. DSWT: Sequence of the *Vinv* gene from Desiree wildtype. (C): *In silico*
 22 translated protein sequences from Desiree wildtype and edited event DSRNP217.

1 5.4 Discussion

2 Direct delivery of RNPs into tobacco, wheat, tomato, and potato cells has been achieved successfully
3 using PEG-mediated protoplast transfection ([Andersson et al., 2018](#), [Lin et al., 2018](#), [González et al.,](#)
4 [2020](#), [Zhao et al., 2021](#), [Nicolia et al., 2021](#)). This method can result in up to a 72% editing efficiency
5 in potato protoplasts ([Andersson et al., 2018](#), [González et al., 2020](#), [Zhao et al., 2021](#)). However,
6 regenerated plants from protoplasts often suffer from somaclonal variation, with the number of
7 regenerants carrying unwanted chromosomal variation accounted for up to 95% of total generated
8 shoots from potato protoplasts ([Jones et al., 1983](#), [Fossi et al., 2019](#)). Besides, protoplast
9 transfection is a challenging method that requires specific technical skills in handling, and technical
10 errors can reduce protoplast yield and quality ([Craig et al., 2005](#)). As seen in this chapter, the
11 established protocol did not entirely guarantee the success of protoplast transfection.

12 Isolated protoplasts can be cultured in a liquid medium, and this was often used in early work on
13 potato protoplasts ([Kikuta et al., 1986](#), [Jones et al., 1989](#), [Foulger and Jones, 1986](#)), but immobilising
14 protoplasts in alginate can be beneficial. Alginate is supposed to prevent protoplast from
15 agglutinating, reduce polyphenol production, and promote cell wall regrowth and cell division
16 ([Moon et al., 2021](#)). Thus, protoplasts were expected to survive better and form more calli in
17 alginate lenses. However, in experiments reported here, the quality of the isolated protoplasts was
18 disappointing, and protoplast viability quickly declined. The protoplasts did not grow and divide
19 either in liquid medium or alginate lens during the culture process. The protoplast transfection
20 experiments were carried out to evaluate the potential of this method for RNP delivery. However,
21 more work and time were required to optimise the culture and regeneration process to improve the
22 efficiency of protoplast transfection. For example, alginate lenses that contain protoplasts can be
23 cultured on a solid medium instead of a liquid medium, as it can promote better callus formation
24 from protoplasts ([Moon et al., 2021](#)). In general, protoplast isolation and culture from potato can

1 also be an 'art'; that is, it takes time to optimise such systems, and despite the donor plants being
2 grown in controlled conditions, responses to potato in tissue culture can vary with the season.

3 The particle bombardment approach is a more novel approach for RNP delivery than protoplast
4 transfection, and no specific editing efficiencies for potato are available at present ([Makhotenko et](#)
5 [al., 2019](#)). Nevertheless, particle bombardment does offer advantages over the protoplast
6 transfection approach. Firstly, explants used for bombardment are typically leaf discs or stem
7 sections that regenerate shoots readily, with a lower frequency of somaclonal variation and genomic
8 instability than shoots regenerated from protoplasts ([Fossi et al., 2019](#)). Secondly, the regeneration
9 process for bombarded explants is relatively straightforward, and makes use of established protocols
10 in *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation. Thirdly, shoot induction can be achieved in a shorter
11 time from bombarded explants (leaf discs or stem sections) than from cultured protoplasts. Shoots
12 emerged from leaf discs within three weeks post bombardment in this study, while protoplasts may
13 take 3-6 months of culture to regenerate shoots ([Jones et al., 1989](#)).

14 In this work, the RNP-particle bombardment approach yielded a 0.4% editing efficiency, and this was
15 similar to what was achieved for wheat ([Liang et al., 2017](#)), but lower than the reported frequency of
16 1.9% after particle bombardment of potato with plasmid DNA ([Romano et al., 2001](#)). There are
17 several reasons why RNP bombardment is relatively inefficient compared to using expression
18 vectors. The first is that there is less editing machinery (Cas 9 and gRNA) available in RNP-
19 bombarded cells: plasmid DNA integrates into the plant genome, and expression can continue, while
20 RNPs gradually degrade in bombarded cells. The second is that a selectable marker is usually used to
21 select cells with integrated DNA of Cas9/gRNAs and these cells are likely to have edited sequences in
22 target genes.

23 Increasing the number of shots bombarded per explant can improve the editing efficiency as RNPs
24 will be delivered into more cells. The 0.4% efficiency reported in this chapter resulted from double
25 bombardments per explant. In comparison, in wheat embryos that were bombarded four times, up

1 to 4.2% of regenerants carried mutant alleles ([Imai et al., 2020](#)), 7.5 times higher than the 0.56%
2 from wheat embryos bombarded once ([Liang et al., 2017](#)). The pre-mature stop codon generated in
3 the predicted protein sequence of the mutated *Vlnv* allele in the DSRNP217 event indicates that the
4 mutated protein is truncated after translation, so its function is likely to be reduced.

5 The effectiveness of direct delivery of RNPs via particle bombardment was demonstrated in this
6 chapter. Although the editing efficiency was low, it could be improved by optimising the process
7 and increasing the number of bombarded explants. For potato, this method holds tremendous
8 potential as an RNP delivery method for generating non-transgenic edited events. Alternatively,
9 improving the efficiency of culture and regeneration of shoots from potato protoplasts would enable
10 many more edited events to be generated, with the disadvantage of increased somaclonal variation
11 in the resultant plants.

Chapter 6

Assessing the levels of sugars in cold-stored tubers and acrylamide content in crisps from gene-edited potato plants

1 **6.1 Introduction**

2 In this project, the *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes were targeted using the CRISPR/Cas9 system to reduce the
3 accumulation of glucose and fructose (hexose sugars) in tubers during cold storage and acrylamide
4 formation in high temperature-processed potato products. The edited gene sequences in the
5 generated events were transcribed *in silico* which indicated that premature stop codons had been
6 introduced into exon 3 of the *Vlnv* gene and exon 2 of the *AS1* gene, suggesting possible knockout of
7 these genes (see Chapter 5). In previous studies, in which RNAi and TALENs were used to silence
8 *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes, effective suppression of the accumulation of hexose sugars was achieved,
9 together with a reduced acrylamide content in modified potatoes ([Rommens et al., 2008](#), [Bhaskar et](#)
10 [al., 2010](#), [Ye et al., 2010](#), [Wu et al., 2011](#), [Chawla et al., 2012](#), [Zhu et al., 2014](#), [Zhu et al., 2016](#)).
11 Therefore, it was reasonable to expect that the edited events generated in this study with edited
12 *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes would have significantly reduced hexose sugars and acrylamide levels.

13 In this chapter, the sugar composition in cold-stored tubers and acrylamide in fried potato products
14 were evaluated and compared between the wildtype and gene-edited events. Tubers were
15 harvested from two-month-old plants growing in a glasshouse and were cold-stored at 4°C for four
16 months. The total tuber weight per plant and tuber size were assessed to obtain preliminary data on
17 the performance of gene-edited plants under glasshouse conditions. Soluble sugars were extracted
18 from cold-stored tubers, and these were subjected to an enzymatic assay to determine the content
19 of glucose, fructose, and sucrose. Crisps were made from cold-stored tubers by deep frying the
20 potato tuber slices in vegetable oil, and acrylamide was extracted from those crisps for
21 quantification using an ELISA method. The colour intensity of the fried crisps was assessed to
22 compare the crisps made from cold-stored tubers of gene-edited potato plants with those from
23 wildtype potatoes.

1 **6.2 Methodology**

2 **6.2.1 Growing potato plants for tubers**

3 Three plants each of the gene-edited event and wildtype plants were grown in Physical Containment
4 Level 2 (PC2) glasshouse. Due to the different growth stages, events were divided into two batches
5 growing from August to October 2020 and from September to November 2020. Each plant was
6 grown in a 5 L pot filled with pasteurised Murdoch soil mix (soil mixed with 20 g/L dolomite, 15 g/L
7 CaCO₃, 40 g/L Grower's Blue NPK fertiliser, 40 g/L Osmocote® all-purpose fertiliser plus trace
8 elements). Plants were watered daily, and tubers were harvested after two months. Harvested
9 tubers were counted, washed, air-dried, and weighed before storage in paper bags at 4°C, in the
10 dark for four months. Tuber length and width were measured using the Fiji image processing
11 software with photos taken after harvesting ([Schindelin et al., 2012](#)). Due to a waterlogging event in
12 the second week of the ALpFN1 growth period and leaf miner infestation starting from the fourth
13 week of DSpc07 growth, only two replicates were analysed for each of these events.

14 **6.2.2 Sugar assay**

15 **6.2.2.1 Extraction of soluble sugars**

16 After four months, 4°C cold-stored tubers were brought to room temperature. These were peeled,
17 cut into small pieces, and homogenised in liquid nitrogen using a mortar and pestle. A 300 mg
18 portion of this homogenised sample was mixed with 1 mL of 80% ethanol in a 2-mL tube. The tube
19 was vortexed before incubation at 70°C for an hour with continuous agitation on a heat block. The
20 tube was then centrifuged at 10,000 x g for 2 min, and the supernatant was collected in a new 2-mL
21 tube. The extraction was done separately for each of the three tubers per event, and the extracts
22 were stored at -20°C.

1 **6.2.2.2 Sugar quantification assay**

2 The hexose sugars and sucrose in tuber extracts were quantified using the enzymatic method ([Jones](#)
3 [et al., 1977](#), [McKibbin et al., 2006](#)). The assay was performed in a microplate; each 200- μ L reaction
4 contained 100 mM imidazole, 10 mM $MgCl_2$, 1.1 mM ATP, 0.5 mM $NADP^+$, 0.14 U glucose-6-
5 phosphate dehydrogenase (Cat. No. G6378, Sigma-Alrich) and 20 μ L of the tuber extract at room
6 temperature. Initial absorbance at 340 nm was recorded as the absorbance baseline for each
7 reaction. For glucose, 0.12 U hexokinase (Cat. No. H4502, Sigma-Alrich) was added to the reaction,
8 followed by a 10-min incubation at room temperature, and absorbance was recorded at 340 nm.
9 For fructose quantification, 1 U phosphoglucose isomerase (Cat. No. P5381, Sigma-Alrich) was
10 added, the reaction was incubated for 10 min at room temperature, and the absorbance at 340 nm
11 was recorded. Finally, 4 U invertase (Cat. No. I4504, Sigma-Alrich) was added for sucrose
12 quantification, followed by the same incubation time and absorbance reading. Absorbance was
13 measured using a Beckman Coulter DTX 880 Multimode Detector microplate reader with an A340
14 nm absorbance filter and 10 nm bandwidth. Three readings were recorded for each sample after
15 each enzyme-addition step. Standard curves were generated for each sugar type using
16 concentrations of 0 to 100 nmol. The sugar concentrations in each sample were determined by
17 plotting the absorbance values against the standard curves.

18 **6.2.3 Cold-stored tuber processing and assessment of potato crisp colour intensity**

19 Cold-stored tubers were peeled, cut into 2-mm thick slices using a mandoline slicer and deep-fried in
20 vegetable oil at 191°C for 60 s ([Bhaskar et al., 2010](#)). The oil temperature was monitored with a
21 digital food thermometer. Fried crisps were cooled on paper towels and photographed to record
22 their colour. The colour intensity of potato crisps was measured using the FIJI image processing
23 software, with a value of 255 being the brightest (white) and the value 0 being the darkest (black)
24 ([Schindelin et al., 2012](#)).

1 **6.2.4 Acrylamide ELISA assay**

2 **6.2.4.1 Acrylamide extraction**

3 Acrylamide extraction was performed according to the manufacturer's instructions for the
4 Acrylamide-ES ELISA kit (Eurofins). Three 15-mL tubes were prepared with labels for each sample:
5 waste, #1 and #2. The SPE column was removed from the packaging, put in the waste tube, and
6 conditioned with 2 mL of 100% methanol. The tube was centrifuged at 500 rpm, for at least 4 min,
7 to ensure all liquid passed through, and the flow-through was discarded. The column was rinsed
8 twice with 2 mL of Milli-Q water, each with the same centrifugation step. Flow-through was
9 discarded after each rinse, and the conditioned SPE column was moved to tube #1. The ENV + SPE
10 column was conditioned using the same method as the SPE column and was left inserted in the
11 waste tube after discarding the flow-through from the final rinse.

12 Fried crisps from each sample were homogenised in liquid nitrogen using a mortar and pestle, and 2
13 g of the powdered sample was put in a 50 mL extraction tube (provided with the kit) with 40 mL of
14 Milli-Q water. The tube was vortexed and then kept on an orbital shaker at 250 rpm for 30 min at
15 room temperature. After that, the tube was vortexed briefly, and the sample was then allowed to
16 sediment for 5 min. The 0.45 µm filter provided with the extraction kit was pushed into the
17 extraction tube using the filter plunger. Each filtered sample was transferred to four separate 2 mL
18 tubes (1.5 mL filtrate in each), and these were centrifuged at 14,000 x g for 5 min at room
19 temperature. A 250 µL aliquot of liquid supernatant from each tube was collected avoiding the top
20 fat layer and the solids at the bottom. A total of 2 mL of liquid supernatant was transferred to the
21 conditioned SPE column in tube #1. The tube was then centrifuged at 500 rpm for 4 min or until all
22 liquid passed through the column. The SPE column was rinsed with 1 mL of Milli-Q water followed
23 by centrifugation at the same speed, and the eluate was collected in the same tube #1, making the
24 total eluate volume 3 mL. One mL of this eluted sample was passed through the conditioned ENV +
25 SPE column in the waste tube by centrifugation at 500 rpm for 4 min. The remaining 2 mL of eluted

1 sample was passed through the conditioned ENV + SPE column with the same centrifugation, and
2 the content in the waste tube was discarded. The column was rinsed twice with 1 mL of Milli-Q
3 water each time, and the liquid in the waste tube was discarded. The column was dried by
4 centrifugation at 2,400 rpm for 10 min, and then it was inserted into tube #2. The acrylamide
5 extract bound to the column was eluted with 2 mL of 60% methanol with two elutions (1 mL each)
6 and centrifugation at 500 rpm for 4 min. The eluate (2 mL in total) was transferred to a clean 4-mL
7 brown glass vial (provided with the kit) and stored at 4°C for further analysis.

8 **6.2.4.2 Derivatisation of acrylamide**

9 The acrylamide extract, acrylamide standards and the control were derivatised according to the
10 manufacturer's protocol (Eurofins Scientific). Briefly, 250 µL of sample/standard/control was
11 transferred to a clean 4-mL brown glass vial (provided with the kit), and 50 µL of derivatisation
12 reagent was added. The vial was vortexed vigorously for 15 s and incubated at 50°C for an hour.
13 The sample was cooled to room temperature before adding 2 mL of acrylamide assay buffer.

14 **6.2.4.3 ELISA assay**

15 An aliquot of 50 µL of the derivatised sample/standard/control was added to a secondary goat anti-
16 rabbit antibody-coated well of the microtiter plate (Figure 6-1). A 50 µL of acrylamide-HRP enzyme
17 conjugate were added to each well, followed by 50 µL of primary rabbit anti-acrylamide antibody
18 solution. The content in each well was mixed individually by pipetting, and the plate was sealed and
19 incubated for an hour at 4°C. After incubation, the solution was decanted, and the plate was
20 inverted on a paper towel to remove all liquid. Each well was washed three times with 250 µL of
21 cold wash buffer each, and the plate was inverted on a paper towel after each wash to ensure the
22 removal of all liquid. To each well, 150 µL of substrate solution was added and mixed well by
23 pipetting, and then the plate was incubated in the dark for 30 min. After 30 mins, 100 µL of stop
24 solution was added to each well, and the solution was mixed thoroughly. Absorbance at 450 nm was

- 1 read within 15 minutes of adding the stop solution using a Beckman Coulter DTX 880 Multimode
- 2 Detector microplate reader.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
A	Std 0	Std 4	Atlantic	ALpFN2	DSpco4	DSpco8	DSpco12					
B	Std 0	Std 4	Atlantic	Desiree	DSpco4	DSpco8	DSpFN4					
C	Std 1	Std 5	Atlantic	Desiree	DSpco5	DSpco8	DSpFN4					
D	Std 1	Std 5	ALpFN1	Desiree	DSpco5	DSpco9	DSpFN4					
E	Std 2	Std 6	ALpFN1	DSpco3	DSpco5	DSpco9						
F	Std 2	Std 6	ALpFN1	DSpco3	DSpco7	DSpco9						
G	Std 3	Control	ALpFN2	DSpco3	DSpco7	DSpco12						
H	Std 3	Control	ALpFN2	DSpco4	DSpco7	DSpco12						

Figure 6-1. Layout of the microtiter plate for the ELISA assay. Std 0 to Std6: standard 0 to standard 6. Control: acrylamide control. Extracted acrylamide samples were analysed in triplicate.

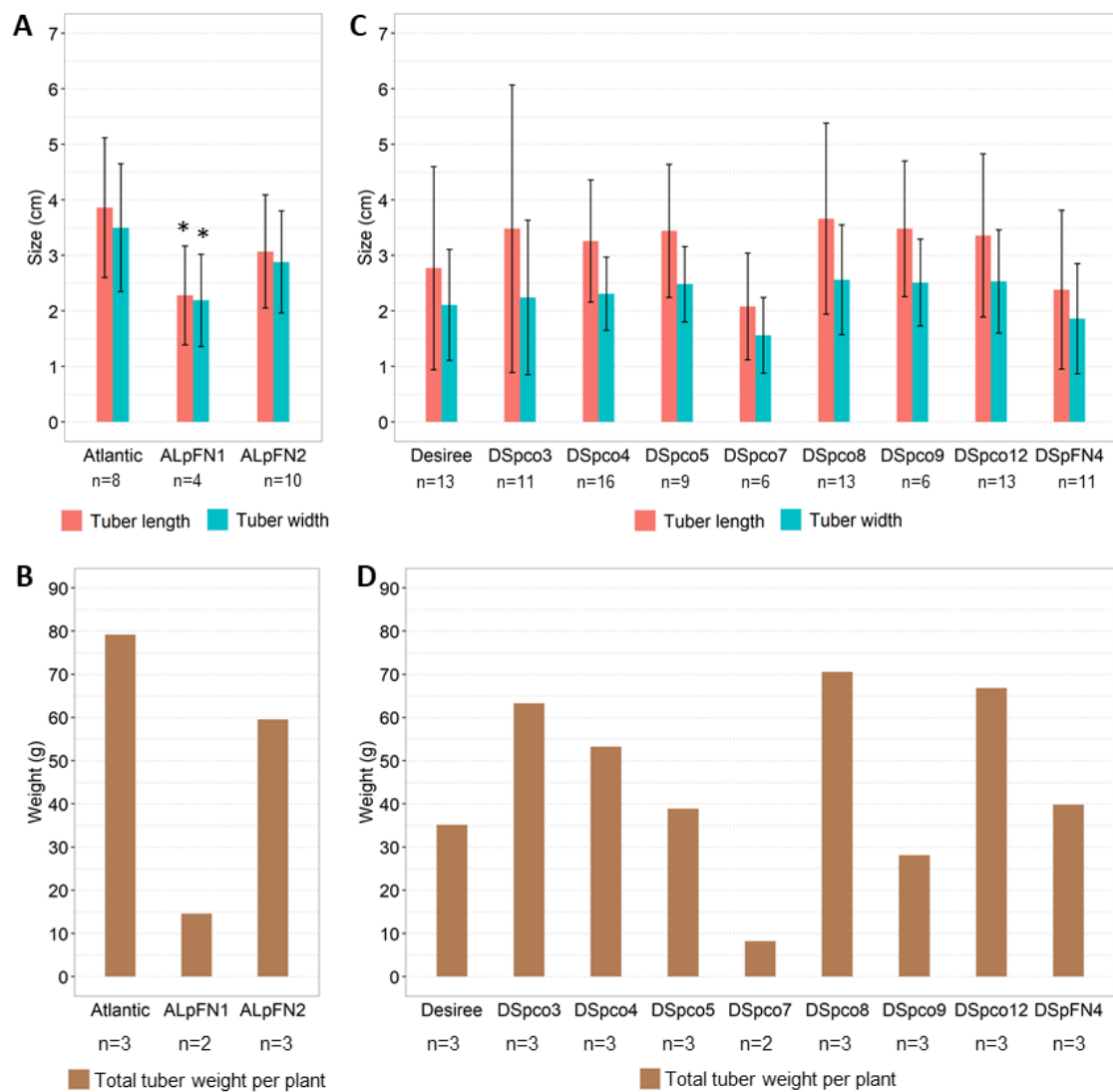
6.2.5 Statistical analysis

Raw data from sugar assay was processed using Microsoft Excel software: the initial (baseline) absorbance value was subtracted from the measured absorbance value for each sugar type (glucose, fructose, or sucrose), a standard curve for each sugar type was generated and used to calculate the corresponding sugar concentration in the extracted sample. The acrylamide ELISA assay results were analysed using the four-parameter logistic (4PL) method on MyAssays (<https://www.myassays.com/four-parameter-logistic-curve.assay>) with the dilution factor of the sample as 20. Welch Two Sample t-test (at 95% confidence interval) was used to determine differences in tuber size, crisp colour intensity, sugar content and acrylamide content between wildtype and gene-edited events. Statistical analysis was performed using R ver.3.6.3 (R Core Team, 2020), and statistical significance was assessed at $p \leq 0.05$ level. Column charts were generated using the R package “ggplot2” (Wickham, 2009), with error bars indicating standard deviation.

1 6.3 Results

2 6.3.1 Total weight and size of harvested tubers from wildtype and gene-edited plants

3 Tuber formation was evident one month after transferring the plants to the glasshouse. Atlantic
4 tuber sizes ranged from 1.5 cm to 5 cm, and Desiree tuber sizes were from 0.7 cm to 6 cm in length
5 (Figure 6-2 A and C). Among two events derived from Atlantic, the size of tubers from the ALpFN2
6 event was comparable with those of wildtype ($p \leq 0.05$), while tubers from the ALpFN1 event
7 appeared to be significantly ($p \leq 0.05$) smaller (Figure 6-2 A). A reduction in total tuber weight per
8 plant was also observed for ALpFN1, with an average tuber weight of 14.6 g per plant, lower than
9 the 79.1 g per plant for wildtype (Figure 6-2 B). The tuber sizes of all Desiree-derived gene-edited
10 events were similar to Desiree wildtype with no significant differences ($p \leq 0.05$) in either tuber
11 length or width (Figure 6-2 C). Three Desiree-derived events: DSpc3, DSpc8, and DSpc12
12 produced approximately twice the total tuber weight per plant of wildtype while a low total tuber
13 weight per plant (8.2 g) was recorded for DSpc7 (Figure 6-2 D).



1

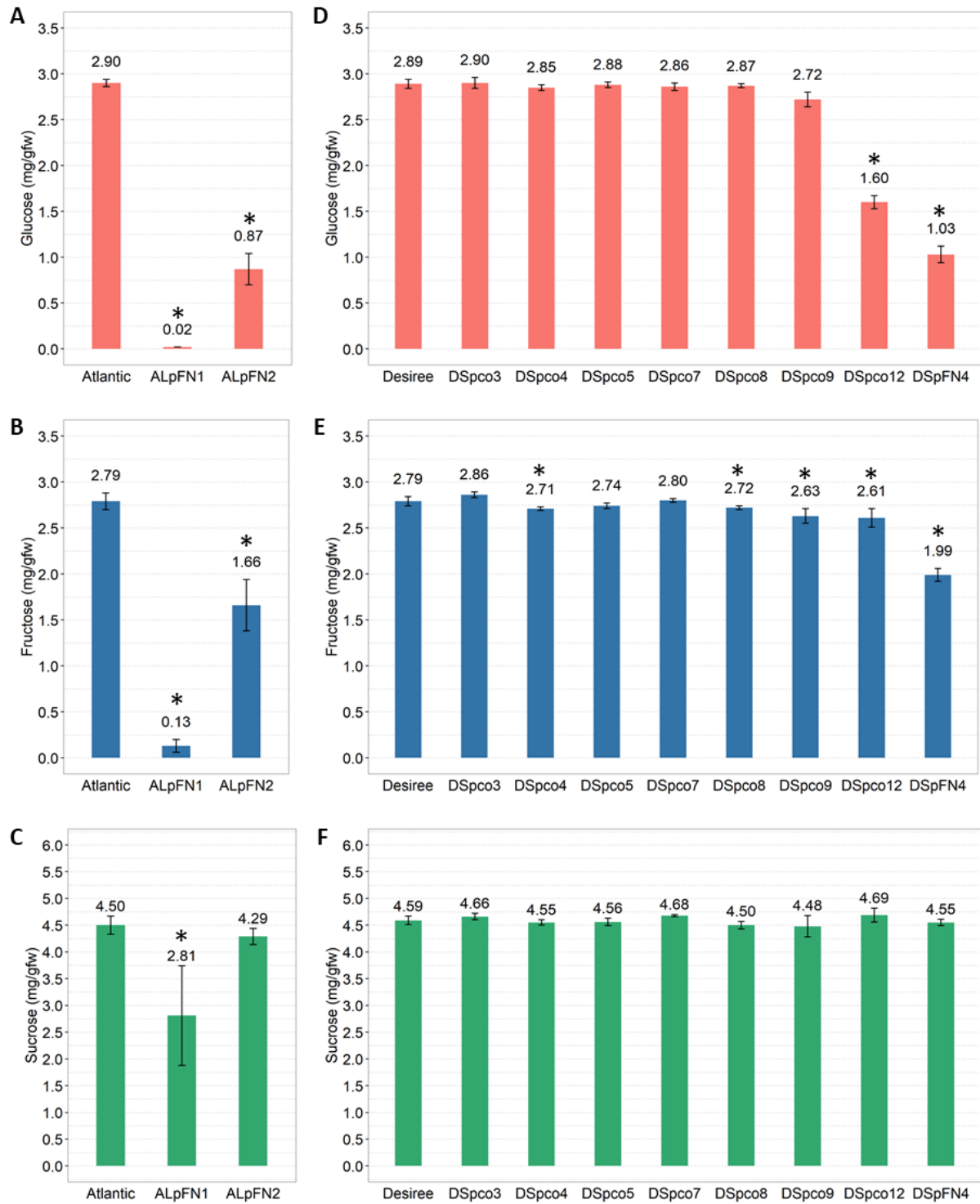
Figure 6-2. Potato tuber size and total tuber weight per plant. (A) and (B): Tuber size and total tuber weight per plant of Atlantic wildtype and gene-edited events. (C) and (D): Tuber size and total tuber weight per plant of Desiree wildtype and gene-edited events. Error bars indicate standard deviation, asterisk (*) indicates statistical significance at $p \leq 0.05$ relative to the corresponding wildtype, n represents the number of replicates.

7 6.3.2 Sugar content in cold-stored tubers

8 A significant reduction ($p \leq 0.05$) in glucose and fructose concentration was measured in two gene-
 9 edited events for Atlantic: ALpFN1 and ALpFN2 (Figure 6-3 A and B). The glucose content measured
 10 for tubers of ALpFN1 and ALpFN2 was significantly ($p \leq 0.05$) lower at 0.02 mg/gfw and 0.87 mg/gfw
 11 compared to 2.9 mg/gfw in wildtype tubers (Figure 6-3 A). Fructose was present at a higher
 12 concentration than glucose in ALpFN1 and ALpFN2, but its concentration was still significantly ($p \leq$

1 0.05) lower than that in wildtype tubers, with 0.13 mg/gfw in ALpFN1 and 1.66 mg/gfw in ALpFN2
2 compared to 2.79 mg/gfw in wildtype (Figure 6-3 B). The sucrose concentration in ALpFN2 was
3 comparable with wildtype, while the sucrose concentration detected in ALpFN1 was significantly ($p \leq$
4 0.05) lower than wildtype, with an approximately 32.4% reduction (2.81 mg/gfw in ALpFN1
5 compared to 4.5 mg/gfw in Atlantic wildtype, Figure 6-3 C).

6 In contrast to Atlantic gene-edited events, the glucose concentration in six out of eight Desiree gene-
7 edited events (DSpco3, DSpco4, DSpco5, DSpco7, DSpco8 and DSpco9) was not different from
8 wildtype at $p \leq 0.05$ (Figure 6-3 D). A significant reduction ($p \leq 0.05$) in glucose concentration was
9 only observed for DSpco12 and DSpFN4 events, for which the glucose content was 55.4% and 35.6%
10 of that detected for the wildtype (1.6 mg/gfw in DSpco12 and 1.03 mg/gfw in DSpFN4 compared to
11 2.89 mg/gfw glucose for Desiree wildtype, Figure 6-3 D). Five out of eight Desiree gene-edited
12 events had significantly ($p \leq 0.05$) lower fructose concentration than wildtype (DSpco4, DSpco8,
13 DSpco9, DSpco12 and DSpFN4, Figure 6-3 E). The sucrose concentration in all Desiree gene-edited
14 events was comparable to the wildtype at $p \leq 0.05$ (Figure 6-3 F).



1

2

Figure 6-3. Concentration of glucose, fructose, and sucrose in cold-stored potato tubers of wildtype and gene-edited events. (A), (B) and (C): Concentration of glucose, fructose, and sucrose in cold-stored tubers of Atlantic wildtype and gene-edited events, respectively. (D), (E) and (F): Concentration of glucose, fructose, and sucrose in cold-stored tubers of Desiree wildtype and gene-edited events, respectively. Concentrations are expressed as milligram per gram fresh weight of tuber. Bars represent the average concentration for three replicate tubers, with three technical replicates measured from each tuber. Error bars represent standard deviation. Asterisks (*) indicate values that were significantly ($p \leq 0.05$) different from those of wildtype.

1 **6.3.3 Colour intensity of fried potato crisps**

2 The potato tuber slices were fried in two separate batches, and their colour intensity after frying was
3 compared to the corresponding wildtype slices of the same batch. Browning of tuber slices started
4 approximately after frying for 30 s. Tuber slices from the events ALpFN1 and ALpFN2 did not turn
5 brown even after 60 s of frying, and the crisps had a distinctively lighter colour (Figure 6-4 A and B)
6 with significantly ($p \leq 0.05$) higher (lighter) colour intensity than Atlantic wildtype (Figure 6-5 A and
7 B). Crisps made from tubers of five out of eight Desiree gene-edited events were lighter in colour
8 with significantly ($p \leq 0.05$) higher colour intensities than wildtype (Figure 6-4 C and D, Figure 6-5 C
9 and D). Crisps made from tubers of the other three Desiree gene-edited events, DSpco3, DSpco5
10 and DSpco7, developed similar browning as the wildtype crisps ($p \leq 0.05$) (Figure 6-5 C and D).

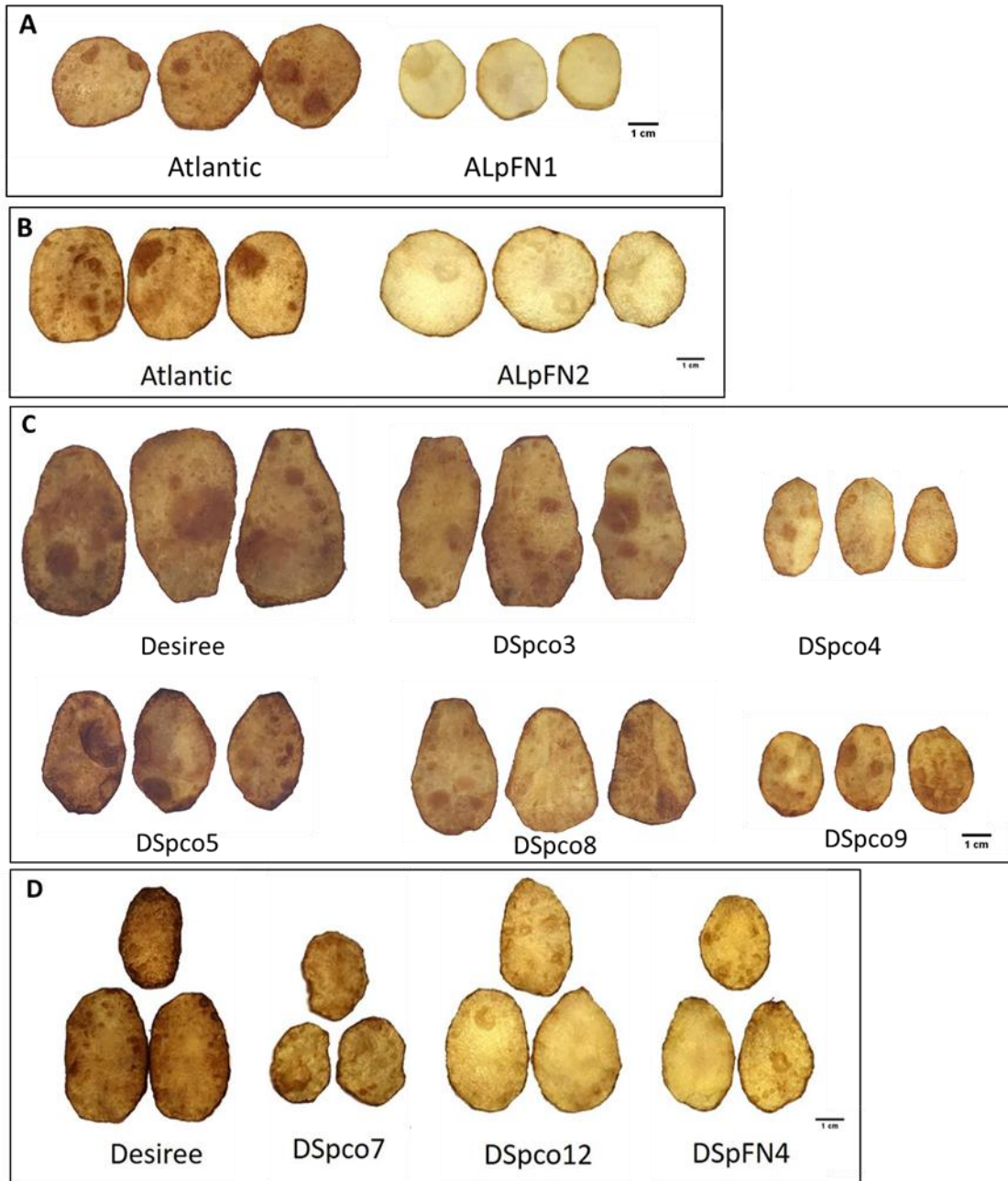


Figure 6-4. Crisps made from potato tubers of wildtype and gene-edited events (A) and (B): Crisps made from tubers of Atlantic wildtype and gene-edited events. (C) and (D): Crisps made from tubers of Desiree wildtype and gene-edited events. Tubers were stored at 4°C for four months, then peeled and sliced with a thickness of 2 mm before deep-frying at 191°C in vegetable oil for 60 seconds. Scale = 1 cm.

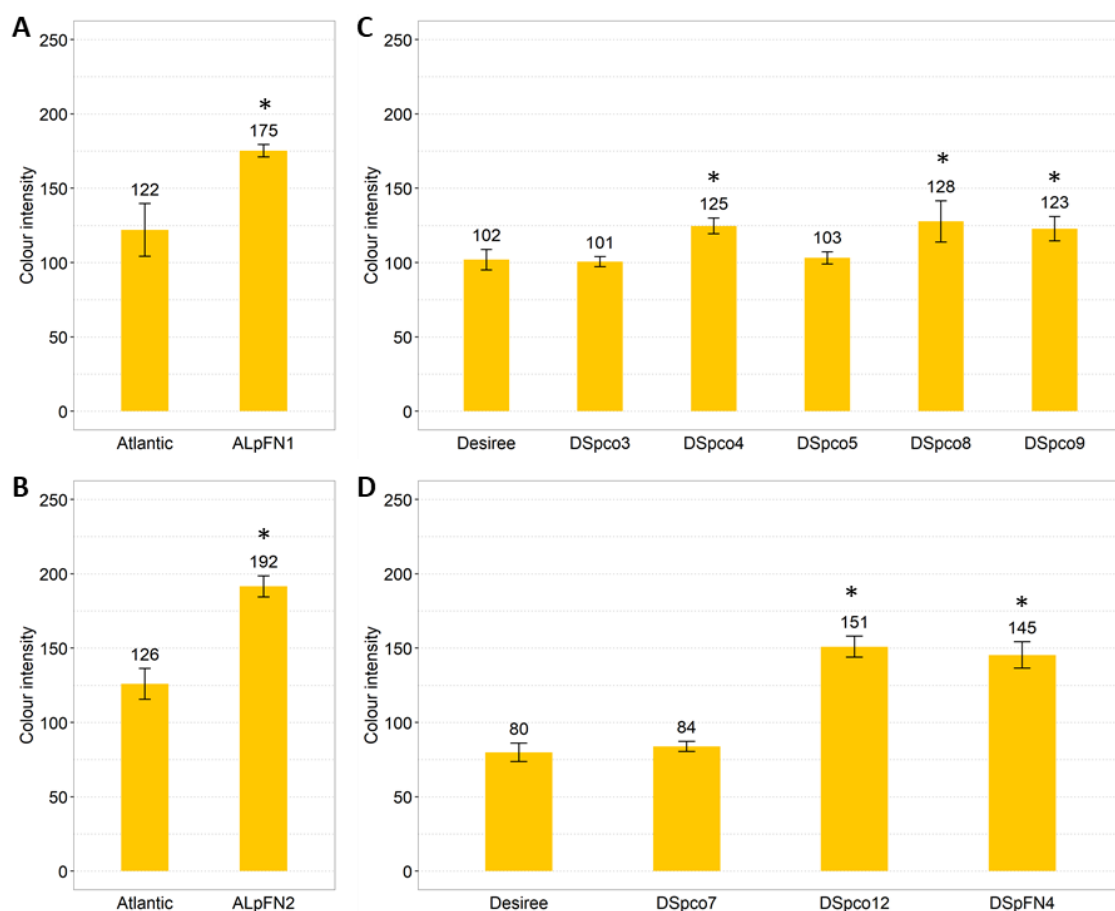
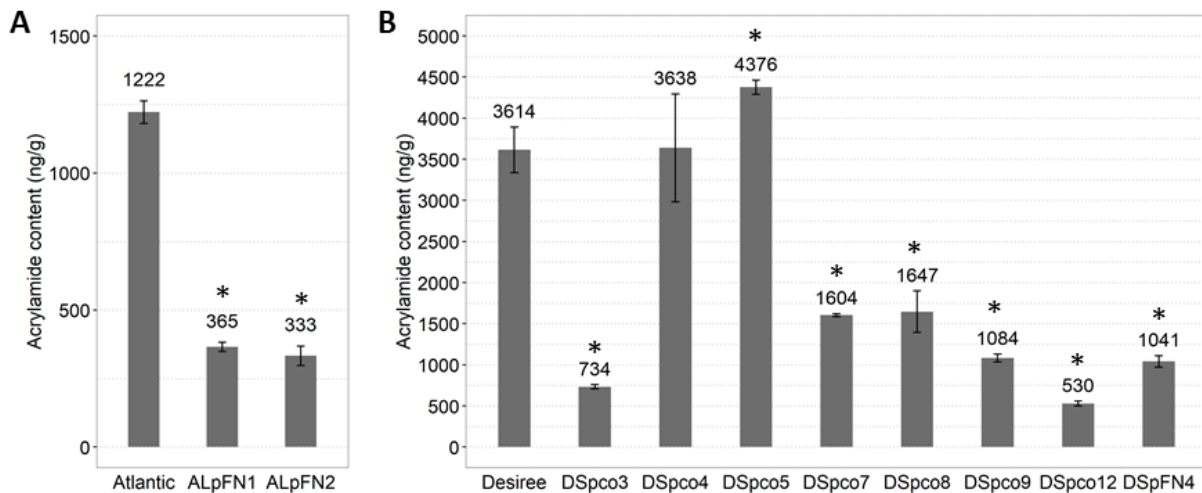


Figure 6-5. Colour intensity of potato crisps. Graphs (A) and (B): Colour intensity of crisps made from cold-stored tubers of Atlantic wildtype and gene-edited events. Graphs (C) and (D): Colour intensity of crisps made from cold-stored tubers of Desiree wildtype and gene-edited events. Tubers were stored at 4°C for four months before being deep-fried at 191°C for 60 s. Bars represent the mean value of colour intensity from six crisps. Error bars represent standard deviation. Asterisks (*) indicate significance at $p \leq 0.05$ relative to wildtype. Value of colour intensity ranges from 0 being the darkest (black) to 250 being the brightest (white).

9 6.3.4 Acrylamide content in fried crisps

10 The acrylamide in fried potato crisps was extracted and analysed using an ELISA kit (Eurofins
 11 Scientific). The acrylamide content in Atlantic crisps was approximately one-third of Desiree: 1,222
 12 ng/g and 3,614 ng/g, respectively (Figure 6-6). The acrylamide content in crisps made from tubers of
 13 ALpFN1 and ALpFN2 was significantly ($p \leq 0.05$) lower than in crisps from wildtype potatoes, with a
 14 reduction of 72.8% for ALpFN1 and 70.1% for ALpFN2 (Figure 6-6 A). A significant ($p \leq 0.05$)
 15 reduction in acrylamide content was measured in crisps made from cold-stored tubers of six Desiree
 16 gene-edited events (DSpco3, DSpco7, DSpco8, DSpco9, DSpco12 and DSpFN4, Figure 6-6 B). Crisps

1 made from cold-stored tubers of DSpc07 and DSpc08 had 1,604 ng/g and 1,647 ng/g acrylamide,
 2 respectively, which was less than 50% of the acrylamide content detected in crisps made from cold-
 3 stored tubers of Desiree wildtype (Figure 6-6 B). The acrylamide content in crisps made from
 4 DSpc03, DSpc09 and DSpcFN4 was 733.7 ng/g, 1,084 ng/g and 1,041 ng/g, respectively, and these
 5 values were less than 30% of the acrylamide measured for the wildtype crisps (Figure 6-6 B). Crisps
 6 made from cold-stored tubers of the event DSpc12 contained the least acrylamide among crisps
 7 from tubers of Desiree gene-edited events, with a reduction of 85.3% acrylamide compared to
 8 wildtype crisps (Figure 6-6 B). Interestingly, crisps from tubers of DSpc05 contained 21% more
 9 acrylamide than wildtype crisps (significant at $p \leq 0.05$) (Figure 6-6 B).



10 **Figure 6-6. Acrylamide content in potato crisps.** Graph (A): Acrylamide content in crisps made from cold-stored tubers of Atlantic wildtype and gene-edited events. Graph (B): Acrylamide content in crisps made from cold-stored tubers of Desiree wildtype and gene-edited events. Acrylamide content is expressed as ng per gram of crisps. Crisps were made from cold-stored tubers by deep-frying 2-mm thick slices in vegetable oil for 60 s. Bars represent average acrylamide content from three samples, with three technical replicates per sample. Error bars represent standard deviation. Asterisk (*) indicate significance at $p \leq 0.05$ relative to wildtype

18 6.4 Discussion

19 Potato plants of the wildtype and gene-edited events were grown in a PC2 glasshouse from *in vitro*
 20 culture to collect the tubers. Among all tested gene-edited events, DSpc07 and ALpFN1 plants had
 21 the lowest total tuber weight per plant, and the tubers from ALpFN1 were smaller than those of the
 22 wildtype. Editing of the *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes was not expected to affect either tuber weight or size

1 negatively since there was no yield reduction or abnormal tuber phenotype when *Vlnv* and *AS1*
2 genes were knocked out in potato varieties Ranger Russet, Russet Burbank and Katahdin using RNAi
3 ([Rommens et al., 2008](#), [Bhaskar et al., 2010](#), [Chawla et al., 2012](#), [Zhu et al., 2016](#)). The low total
4 tuber weight per plant and smaller tuber size in ALpFN1 and DSpc07 probably resulted from
5 waterlogging and leaf miner infestation during their growth in the glasshouse. In addition,
6 provenance may also affect the growth of *in vitro* plants when they are transferred to soil. Because
7 of the limited number of gene-edited plants available for a field trial and time restrictions resulting
8 from Covid-19 lockdowns, plants were grown in a glasshouse to harvest tubers. The size and yield of
9 tubers of edited potato plants reported here cannot be taken as a reflection of any differences that
10 might be present under standard growth conditions.

11 In relation to yield, it was reported that *AS1*-silenced RNAi potato lines exhibited a lower yield than
12 wildtype when they were grown in the field from seed tubers ([Chawla et al., 2012](#)). The expression
13 level of *AS1* in those RNAi lines was not presented, but the low yield could be caused by extreme
14 silencing of the *AS1* gene, which interrupted the flow of nitrogen within the plant ([Lam et al., 2003](#)).
15 This could be the case of the ALpFN1 and DSpc07 events which had high mutation frequencies for
16 the *AS1* gene. Such results indicate that the expression of the *AS1* and asparagine levels in edited
17 events needs to be assessed further to investigate any effects of different degrees of editing on
18 tuber yields. Field trials with larger plant populations, undertaken over at least two years, would be
19 needed to remove provenance effects and provide a proper assessment of the phenotype and yield
20 of the gene-edited events developed here.

21 In most of the gene-edited events that were generated, the concentrations of glucose and fructose
22 were significantly lower than that in the wildtype ($p \leq 0.05$). However, for three Desiree gene-edited
23 events (DSpc03, DSpc05 and DSpc07), there was no significant difference in fructose concentration.
24 Also, for six Desiree gene-edited events (DSpc03, Dspco4, DSpc05, Dspco7, DSpc08 and DSpc09),
25 glucose concentrations were similar to that of the wildtype ($p \leq 0.05$), even though they all had
26 mutated *Vlnv* genes. It is possible that not all target alleles had been edited in some cases, so

1 wildtype allele(s) were still present (DSpc03, DSpc04, DSpc09), and these genes could be transcribed
2 and translated to generate functional VINV protein. The variation in mutation types and frequency
3 is expected to result in a range of VINV activity, which would be reflected in differing levels of
4 hexose sugars present in tubers. Similar observations were mentioned in studies by [Clasen et al.](#)
5 [\(2016\)](#) and [Tuncel et al. \(2019\)](#), in which the correlation between mutation frequency and protein
6 activity was studied. Additionally, mutated alleles that did not have a frameshift mutation or
7 premature stop codon introduced in the transcript (in DSpc03 and DSpc07) are unlikely to have
8 greatly modified VINV protein production and activity. Hence, the vacuolar invertase translated
9 from edited *Vinv* genes containing wildtype allele(s), or mutated alleles without a premature stop
10 codon, would still have partially or fully functional protein, with enough activity to convert sucrose
11 to hexose sugars.

12 Although glucose and fructose concentration in gene-edited events were reduced, sucrose
13 concentration remained the same as that of wildtype ($p \leq 0.05$). It was expected that a reduction in
14 glucose and fructose would be balanced by an increased sucrose accumulation, as less sucrose was
15 hydrolysed ([Ye et al., 2010](#), [Bhaskar et al., 2010](#), [Wu et al., 2011](#), [Clasen et al., 2016](#)). However,
16 contradictory results were obtained in this study, in which the sucrose content in the gene-edited
17 events did not increase. The reduction in VINV activity may not be sufficient to change the sucrose
18 level substantially in some events, or sucrose may be redirected to other pathways. Sucrose in plant
19 cells is not only degraded by VINV in the vacuole but also by cytosolic invertase in the cytosol to
20 hexose sugars or by sucrose synthase (SuSy) to fructose and uridine diphosphate glucose (UDP-
21 glucose) ([Ferreira and Sonnewald, 2012](#), [Stein and Granot, 2019](#)). SuSy is the predominant pathway
22 of breaking down sucrose in sink tissues, but when tubers mature, are detached from plant and
23 stored, SuSy activity declines, and VINV activity becomes predominant ([Ross and Davies, 1992](#),
24 [Ferreira and Sonnewald, 2012](#)). It is plausible that in edited events with reduced activity of VINV,
25 sucrose is not accumulated but is hydrolysed by other enzymes instead, resulting in a similar sucrose
26 level as in the wildtype tubers.

1 As anticipated, the acrylamide content measured in crisps made from cold-stored tubers of gene-
2 edited events was lower than those of wildtype tubers. The VINV and AS1 proteins are two key
3 components for acrylamide formation in the Maillard reaction ([Zhu et al., 2016](#)). Among ten tested
4 events, eight carried mutations in both *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes; two events, DSpc05 and DSpc12, had
5 only the edited *Vlnv* gene. The cooked crisps from DSpc12 (with only the edited *Vlnv* gene)
6 contained the least acrylamide compared to other Desiree gene-edited events with mutations in the
7 *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes. This low acrylamide content could result from the lower hexose sugar
8 production in this event, as acrylamide formation is thought to be controlled mainly by hexose sugar
9 levels ([Muttucumaru et al., 2014](#)). Nevertheless, the importance of AS1 in acrylamide formation was
10 noted in other events with no significant ($p \leq 0.05$) change in hexose sugar content, as there was a
11 significantly ($p \leq 0.05$) lower acrylamide in these than in crisps from wildtype. For example, tubers of
12 DSpc07 accumulated similar hexose sugar levels as the wildtype tubers, but crisps made from these
13 tubers contained 56% less acrylamide. It appears that the edited *AS1* gene/product in this event was
14 sufficient to reduce the subsequent acrylamide formation in potato crisps, despite the presence of
15 normal level of hexose sugars in the tubers.

16 Overall, some of the CRISPR/Cas9-induced mutations generated in this study led to a reduction of
17 hexose sugar accumulation in cold-stored tubers and reduced acrylamide content in fried potato
18 crisps. Silencing *Vlnv* alone can reduce acrylamide production but editing both the *Vlnv* and *AS1*
19 genes reduced the acrylamide content in fried potato products more effectively.

Chapter 7

General discussion

1 7.1 Overview

2 Potato is the most important tuber crop and plays a crucial role in world food security. A major use
3 of potatoes is their processing into crisps and French fries. Potatoes that accumulate hexose sugars
4 and exhibit browning after frying are rejected by processors, causing economic losses and waste.

5 There is also a health risk for consumers from acrylamide formation when potatoes are deep-fried
6 because acrylamide is classified as probably carcinogenic to humans. Therefore, generating potato
7 lines that accumulate less hexose sugar during cold storage and have low acrylamide forming
8 potential can reduce food waste and are healthier for human consumption.

9 Conventional methods of potato breeding are time-consuming and require the screening of large
10 populations of germplasm to find desired combinations of alleles. In addition, potato is highly
11 heterozygous and a tetraploid, which further complicates the breeding process, which may take up
12 to 20 years. By making use of new breeding technologies such as CRISPR/Cas9, the long breeding
13 cycles can essentially be eliminated, and an existing well-performing potato variety can be improved
14 for single or multiple traits without changing other qualities.

15 The aim of this project was to develop potato lines which are healthier for human consumption, with
16 low acrylamide-forming potential and reduced cold-induced sweetening. The strategy was to apply
17 the CRISPR/Cas9 gene-editing system to alter the *vacuolar invertase (VInv)* and *asparagine*
18 *synthetase 1 (AS1)* genes in potato. The aim was accomplished through experimental work, and the
19 following objectives were achieved:

- 20 1. Optimisation of micropropagation and regeneration systems for potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.)
21 cultivars Atlantic and Desiree
- 22 2. Identification and characterisation of the target genes *VInv* and *AS1*
- 23 3. Identification of gRNAs targeting *VInv* and *AS1* genes and *in vitro* evaluation of gRNA efficiency
- 24 4. Delivery of the CRISPR/Cas9 system into plant cells via *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation
25 and regeneration of plants from those cells to obtain edited events

- 1 5. Direct delivery of the CRISPR/Cas9 into plants via protoplast transfection or particle
2 bombardment for generating transgene-free gene-edited plants
- 3 6. Identification of edited plants and sequencing to determine the form of gene editing
- 4 7. Biochemical analysis of potato tubers to assess their acrylamide-forming potential and
5 accumulation of hexose sugars after cold storage

6 In summary, *in vitro* regeneration systems to form shoots from leaf explants were optimised for
7 potato cultivars Desiree and Atlantic; these resulted in shoot induction rates of 100% and 64.29%,
8 respectively. Two target genes, *Vlnv* and *AS1*, were cloned and sequenced from both varieties to
9 design target-specific gRNAs with no potential off-targets in the potato genome. Two gRNAs were
10 designed to target two sites (g67 and g10) of the *Vlnv* genes, spaced 135 bp apart in the exon 3.
11 Likewise, the *AS1* gene was also targeted simultaneously by two gRNAs at two sites on exon 1 (g4)
12 and exon 2 (g7), spaced 1,162 bp apart. All gRNAs corresponding to the target sites successfully
13 guided Cas9 to cleave target DNA at the expected sites in the *in vitro* Cas9 cleavage assays. Four
14 transformation vectors expressing Cas9 protein with either dual-gRNAs or four gRNAs were
15 constructed for *Agrobacterium*-mediated plant transformation. Twenty transgenic gene-edited
16 events were obtained, and 17 of these had mutations in both target genes. The Cas9 protein and
17 gRNAs were also assembled as ribonucleoprotein (RNP) complexes and were delivered directly into
18 leaf tissue-derived calli via particle bombardment. After regenerating shoots from calli and
19 screening for mutation, one non-transgenic edited event was obtained from a total of 343 shoots,
20 yielding a 0.44% mutation frequency for the RNP-particle bombardment method. This event was
21 edited at the g10 target site of the *Vlnv* gene.

22 The accumulated glucose and fructose levels in cold-stored tubers of the ten edited events analysed
23 were as low as 0.02 mg/gfw and 0.13 mg/gfw in Atlantic-derived ALpFN1 event, respectively;
24 compared to 2.9 mg/gfw glucose and 2.79 mg/gfw fructose in the Atlantic wildtype tubers. The

1 acrylamide content in crisps from tuber slices of Desiree-derived DSpco12 events was 85% lower
2 than that in crisps of Desiree wildtype tubers.

3 **7.2 The two-step regeneration system yielded a high shoot induction rate** 4 **in potato cultivars Atlantic and Desiree**

5 As developed in this study, 100% of Desiree leaf disc explants generated shoots when cultured on a
6 two-step regeneration system consisting of a callus forming and shooting medium. Desiree has been
7 used often as the variety of choice for optimising various protocols and experimental methods for
8 potato transformation because it responds well in tissue culture ([Wheeler et al., 1985](#), [Butler et al.,
9 2016](#), [Butler et al., 2015](#), [Zhou et al., 2017](#), [Veillet et al., 2019b](#), [Zhan et al., 2019](#)). The regeneration
10 efficiency of Atlantic explants (leaf discs) was relatively lower, with 64.3% producing shoots from the
11 two-stage regeneration system. However, this rate was still better than other established
12 regeneration systems for Atlantic. Three out of seven systems tested were developed explicitly for
13 Atlantic, yet one was not reproducible; one resulted in 10.4% shoot regeneration, and the other
14 resulted in a 32.5% shoot induction rate (T3, T6 and T7 treatments, respectively, see Chapter 2)
15 ([Peng et al., 2008](#), [Han and Lee, 2015](#), [Nadakuduti et al., 2019b](#)). Except for the 10.4% shoot
16 induction rate from the T6 treatment, which was similar to that reported, outcomes from other
17 replicated treatments differed from reported results. When comparing the published regeneration
18 systems for Atlantic, which used multiple media types, the regeneration system developed for
19 Atlantic in this study was relatively simpler, with two media, for callus and shoot formation, and BAP
20 and NAA as the only plant growth regulators (PGR) supplemented in the culture media ([Han and Lee,
21 2015](#), [Nadakuduti et al., 2019b](#)).

22 Potato is a tuber crop that must be vegetatively propagated to maintain its genetic composition. The
23 generation of gene-edited potato plants also depends on having an efficient *in vitro* regeneration
24 system. The success of Cas-9 mediated gene editing depends on various factors such as the Cas9
25 activity, the efficiency of gRNAs *in vivo* and the plant's efficiency in repairing the DNA double-strand

1 breaks correctly ([Peng et al., 2016](#), [Campenhout et al., 2019](#)). Therefore, an effective regeneration
2 system with a high shoot induction rate increases the chances of obtaining gene-edited potato
3 plants.

4 Microtubers, which can be induced *in vitro*, are known to have similar morphology to field-grown
5 tubers, making them ideal for tuber analysis in the laboratory without glasshouse or field growth
6 experiments ([Barker, 1953](#), [Estrada et al., 1986](#)). Although microtubers were not used in the current
7 study, they could be used in other studies which do not require large quantity of tubers, such as in
8 protein production or gene expression studies. Furthermore, microtubers are also useful for
9 germplasm conservation or seed tuber production in breeding programs as they can be induced in a
10 shorter time than field-grown tubers ([Donnelly et al., 2003](#)).

11 **7.3 High frequency of CRISPR/Cas9-induced mutations with the use of** 12 **multiple gRNAs**

13 Up to 100% of the regenerated potato plants obtained after *Agrobacterium*-mediated
14 transformation in this study had CRISPR/Cas9-induced mutations. Transformations with *A.*
15 *tumefaciens* harbouring vectors expressing Cas9 and four gRNAs resulted in 58% to 100% of
16 regenerated plants carrying two edited target genes, while no mutation was obtained from
17 transformation with vectors expressing Cas9 and dual-gRNA targeting one gene. These results
18 indicate that increasing the number of gRNAs can improve gene-editing efficiency as the total
19 number of gRNAs in the transformation vector affects mutation frequency ([Xie et al., 2015](#), [Kusano](#)
20 [et al., 2018](#)). With the incorporation of multiple gRNAs in a single vector, enhancing Cas9 expression
21 with translation enhancers such as the TMV omega used in this study, can avoid the competition for
22 Cas9 among gRNAs, which potentially reduces the mutation frequency ([Xie et al., 2015](#), [Kusano et](#)
23 [al., 2018](#)). In addition, integrating a translation enhancer in the Cas9 expressing sequence also
24 increases multiplex gene-editing efficiency. A higher mutation frequency (100%) was obtained from

1 transformation with the pFN117-ASVI vector carrying TMV omega than transformation with pFGC-
2 ASVI vector (58%). The improvement in gene-editing efficiency obtained with the TMV omega
3 translation enhancer was similar to the use of dMac3 translation enhancer in potato ([Kusano et al.,](#)
4 [2018](#)).

5 Although the efficiency of all four gRNAs was confirmed via *in vitro* Cas9 cleavage assays, this does
6 not guarantee the performance of these gRNAs *in vivo*. The mutation frequency observed at four
7 target sites varied greatly. For the *AS1* gene, no mutation was detected at g4, while g7 yielded a
8 90.6% of mutation frequency. For the *Vlnv* gene, the mutation frequency at g10 was 98.2%, which
9 was much higher than the 17.2% mutation frequency obtained at g67. Guide RNAs that yielded low
10 CRISPR-induced mutation frequency despite having criteria-satisfied sequences and high *in vitro*
11 performance have been reported previously in Arabidopsis, rice and Chinese cabbage (*Brassica rapa*
12 *spp. pekinensis*) ([Feng et al., 2013](#), [Jeong et al., 2019](#), [Zhang et al., 2016b](#)). The *in vitro* gRNA
13 efficiency is thought to be affected by certain sequence features of the gRNA itself and epigenetic
14 factors ([Doench et al., 2014](#), [Xu et al., 2015](#), [Liang et al., 2016](#), [Zhang et al., 2016b](#)). The results that
15 the nucleotide composition of gRNAs can affect gene-editing efficiency are inconsistent, as discussed
16 in Chapter 4, while epigenetic factors are not fully understood at present. Thus, to ensure efficient
17 editing of a given gene, it is recommended that multiple gRNAs are selected for the CRISPR system,
18 since using this strategy results in increasing the chances of generating mutations.

19 **7.4 Mutations in target genes affected the activity of translated proteins**

20 The *Vlnv* and *AS1* genes were targeted to reduce the accumulation of hexose sugars during cold
21 storage and acrylamide in tuber products after processing at high heat. VINV hydrolyses sucrose
22 into glucose and fructose in the vacuoles of tuber cells, and its activity is increased by low
23 temperatures such as 4°C during cold storage ([Malone et al., 2006](#)). The *AS1* enzyme converts
24 aspartate into asparagine, a free amino acid that reacts with hexose sugars in the Maillard reaction

1 at high temperature (120°C or higher) to form acrylamide ([Mottram et al., 2002](#), [Rommens et al.,](#)
2 [2008](#)).

3 Detected mutation types in gene-edited events included deletions from 1 bp to 35 bp, 1-bp
4 insertion, 1-bp substitutions, and a combination of different mutation types in one allele. All
5 CRISPR/Cas9 induced mutations caused frameshift resulting in changes in amino acid sequences, and
6 most of them generated premature stop codons in their predicted protein sequences. Because the
7 gRNAs were designed to target exons near the 5'-end of the selected genes, changes in protein
8 sequence at the start meant that the following protein sequences were also altered. The wildtype
9 VINV protein sequence encodes 639 amino acids, and premature stop codons were introduced in
10 edited events as early as the 174th position of the predicted protein sequence of the mutated *Vinv*
11 gene. Likewise, the wildtype AS1 protein encodes 590 amino acids, and mutated AS1 alleles were
12 predicted to have premature stop codons within positions 34 to 51 of the translated amino acid
13 sequence. Those premature stop codons suggest that proteins translated from mutated genes are
14 likely to be truncated and may have partially or completely lost their function ([Tuncel et al., 2019](#),
15 [Nishitani et al., 2016](#)). In particular, VINV and AS1 activities were expected to be reduced, leading to
16 a reduction in sucrose being processed into hexose sugars, and less asparagine available for
17 acrylamide formation from the Maillard reaction.

18 As expected in edited events with premature stop codons in VINV and AS1 protein sequences,
19 reductions in the content of hexose sugars and acrylamide were found in tubers and fried crisps. For
20 example, VINV and AS1 protein translation in ALpFN1 events was expected to stop at amino acid
21 positions 174 and 51, respectively. In cold-stored tubers of this event, hexose sugars were 0.02
22 mg/gfw glucose and 0.13 mg/gfw fructose, a remarkable 145 times lower than the 2.9 mg/gfw
23 glucose and 21.5 times lower than 2.79 mg/gfw fructose present in cold-stored tubers of wildtype
24 event. The acrylamide content in crisps from cold-stored tubers of the same edited events was one-
25 third of the 1222 ng/g acrylamide present in crisps from wildtype cold-stored tubers. The reduction

1 in acrylamide content indicates that the function of translated proteins from mutated *Vlnv* and *AS1*
2 genes was either partially or completely lost.

3 However, not all edited events exhibited changes in sugar levels. For example, the gene-edited
4 event DSpc05 contained mutations in all its sequenced clones of the *Vlnv* gene with interrupted
5 protein translation at the amino acid position 175. Tubers from this event accumulated a
6 comparable amount of hexose sugars as did wildtype tubers after cold storage. Thus, the VINV
7 protein in this edited event must have remained functional, although a premature stop codon was
8 introduced in its mRNA transcript. In principle, mRNA transcripts that contain premature stop
9 codons are eliminated by the endogenous nonsense-mediated mRNA decay (NMD) mechanism
10 ([Popp and Maquat, 2016](#)). However, the position of the premature stop codon determines the
11 susceptibility of an mRNA transcript to NMD. The premature stop codon in the predicted VINV
12 protein sequence of the DSpc05 event did not fall within 50 nt from the exon-exon junction, making
13 them susceptible to the NMD ([Popp and Maquat, 2016](#)). On the other hand, translation can still be
14 initiated from an in-frame ATG start codon ([Makino et al., 2016](#), [Harries et al., 2005](#)). This
15 translation re-initiation mechanism is active in plants as a regulator of gene expression, as has been
16 observed in human cells, in which proteins were produced from genes containing CRISPR-induced
17 mutations ([Makino et al., 2016](#), [Merchante et al., 2017](#)). It is plausible that the unexpected protein
18 production from an edited gene in events such as DSpc05 was caused by translation re-initiation or
19 from a wildtype allele that was not picked up in clone sequencing.

20 **7.5 RNP-particle bombardment is a promising approach to generate** 21 **transgene-free gene-edited plants**

22 Introducing the CRISPR/Cas9 system into plant cells as an RNP complex avoids the integration of
23 foreign DNA in the plant genome. Two commonly used delivery methods, protoplast transfection
24 and particle bombardment, were tested in chapter 5 of this thesis. Although PEG-mediated
25 protoplast transfection with RNP in potatoes has been reported to produce up to 68% mutation

1 frequency, optimisation is required for efficient protoplast transfection and regeneration ([Andersson](#)
2 [et al., 2018](#), [González et al., 2020](#)). The quality of protoplasts isolated in this work was not ideal, and
3 this contributed to poor results for transfection. Even with high-quality protoplasts, shoot
4 regeneration from potato protoplasts and calli may take up to three months or more, and
5 regenerated shoots often exhibit high levels of tissue culture-induced somaclonal variation, which is
6 manifested by undesirable chromosomal changes ([Jones et al., 1983](#), [Fossi et al., 2019](#)).

7 In this study, it was found that delivery of RNPs *via* particle bombardment was more achievable than
8 by protoplast transfection. RNP-coated gold particles were bombarded into leaf derived calli, and
9 shoots were induced from the third week post bombardment. The mutation frequency obtained
10 from the RNP-particle bombardment of potatoes in this study was 0.44%, comparable with 0.56%
11 reported in wheat ([Liang et al., 2017](#)). RNP-particle bombardment is a relatively new strategy for
12 gene-editing of potatoes. This approach was only applied in a functional study on the role of the
13 nuclear protein coilin in potato in virus resistance in which CRISPR/Cas9 was used to knock down the
14 related gene and no mutation frequency was mentioned ([Makhotenko et al., 2019](#)). It is noteworthy
15 that during the regeneration and shoot induction stages of bombarded explants, the progress of this
16 project was affected by two months of lockdown and exclusion from the laboratories due to the
17 Covid-19 pandemic. Approximately a quarter of the regenerated shoots forming in culture were lost
18 from contamination and overgrowth before it was possible to subject them to mutation screening.
19 Hence, the number of edited events would probably have been greater, and more than the one
20 edited event obtained from screening the remaining 343 available shoots after lockdown. The
21 edited event generated from the RNP bombardment approach contained a 1-bp deletion at the g10
22 target site of the *Vlnv* gene, which introduced a premature stop codon in its predicted protein
23 sequence, suggesting an interruption in protein function.

24 The effectiveness of CRISPR/Cas9 with four gRNAs was clearly demonstrated in the edited plants
25 regenerated after *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation. RNP-particle bombardment with those

1 gRNAs can be followed up to generate more non-transgenic edited events. As found in edited
2 events generated from *Agrobacterium*-mediated plant transformation after selection, the properties
3 targeted were significantly modified. Hexose sugar accumulation in tubers and acrylamide
4 formation potential in crisps were significantly reduced ($p \leq 0.05$) after cold storage. Therefore, apart
5 from the need to screen more shoots regenerated after RNP-particle bombardment, it can be
6 expected that SDN-1 non-GM plants can be generated, which will exhibit similar characteristics to
7 those found in GM edited plants. This is highly significant, since this approach holds great potential
8 for commercial development of edited plants, as they are not regulated as GMOs in increasingly
9 more countries.

10 **7.6 Conclusion and future recommendations**

11 This study successfully demonstrated that CRISPR/Cas9 gene editing could be used to improve
12 important traits in widely grown potato cultivars such as Atlantic and Desiree, without loss of the
13 variety. There is increasing interest by consumers in food, and they are becoming more health-
14 conscious. Tubers of the generated gene-edited events accumulated less hexose sugars during cold
15 storage, and fried potato crisps produced lower acrylamide with less browning ($p \leq 0.05$). The first
16 trait is important to potato processors since it can reduce losses, whereas a reduction in acrylamide
17 levels is an excellent health trait. Further experiments on expression of edited gene and protein
18 production/ protein concentration are recommended as they will provide better insight on the effect
19 of editing on plant phenotype.

20 The *Agrobacterium*-mediated plant transformation method yielded more CRISPR/Cas9-induced
21 mutations, and these demonstrated the further potential of gene-editing in potato. The RNP-
22 particle bombardment approach to generate transgene-free edited events demonstrates the
23 potential for commercialisation of potatoes developed using this strategy. RNP complexes can be
24 assembled using designed gRNAs to obtain similar improved properties reported for the transgenic

1 edited events. Although GM modified potato plants are being grown commercially in the USA,
2 transgene-free edited potatoes are likely to be more acceptable to a broader range of consumers.

3 Other properties that can be modified by gene-editing include tubers with higher levels of vitamins
4 and amino acids to improve their nutritional value. For example, targeting *methionine gamma-lyase*
5 (*MGL*), which catalyses methionine degradation, can alter the methionine catabolic pathway and
6 increase free methionine content in potato tubers ([Kumar and Jander, 2017](#)). Improved vitamin A
7 levels in potato tuber can also be achieved using CRISPR/Cas9 to target *lycopene ϵ -cyclase* (*LCY-e*) to
8 redirect lycopene to β -carotene (provitamin A) biosynthesis ([Diretto et al., 2006](#)). Designing new
9 gRNAs targeting *MGL* and *LCY-e* genes in events developed from this project would generate even
10 more elite potato lines. Such potato lines can be cold stored for an extended period without high
11 acrylamide formation in processed products while providing extra vitamin A and methionine for
12 human health. For ease of development, *Agrobacterium*-mediated plant transformation can be used
13 for functional studies because of the higher mutation frequency. Results from such studies can be
14 applied to RNP-particle bombardment to develop better potatoes for commercial growth.

15 An important aspect of the wider use of gene-edited potatoes and other crops is the need for
16 harmonisation of international regulations, so that they do not constitute non-tariff barriers to
17 international trade. With the exclusion of EU countries and New Zealand, SDN-1 edited crops are no
18 longer regulated as GMOs in an increasing number of countries. These include the USA, Canada,
19 most countries in South America, South Africa, Japan and Australia, with many other countries
20 considering their policies and regulations to de-regulate SDN-1 gene-edited products ([Menz et al.,](#)
21 [2020](#), [Gupta et al., 2021](#)). As this trend continues, there is optimism that at least SDN-1 gene-edited
22 produce will be used more fully to increase both the quantity and quality of food for future
23 generations.

REFERENCES

- ABS. 2020. 'Table 1: AGRICULTURAL COMMODITIES–Australia–2018-19', data cube: Excel spreadsheet [Online]. Australian Bureau of Statistics. Available: <https://www.abs.gov.au/AUSSTATS/abs@.nsf/DetailsPage/7121.02018-19?OpenDocument> [Accessed 17 Jun 2020].
- ANDERS, C. & JINEK, M. 2014. *In vitro* enzymology of Cas9. *Methods in Enzymology*. Elsevier.
- ANDERSSON, M., TURESSON, H., NICOLIA, A., FÄLT, A.-S., SAMUELSSON, M. & HOFVANDER, P. 2017. Efficient targeted multiallelic mutagenesis in tetraploid potato (*Solanum tuberosum*) by transient CRISPR-Cas9 expression in protoplasts. *Plant Cell Reports*, 36, 117-128.
- ANDERSSON, M., TURESSON, H., OLSSON, N., FALT, A. S., OHLSSON, P., GONZALEZ, M. N., SAMUELSSON, M. & HOFVANDER, P. 2018. Genome editing in potato via CRISPR-Cas9 ribonucleoprotein delivery. *Physiologia Plantarum*, 164, 378-384.
- ANJUM, M. A. & ALI, H. 2004. Effect of culture medium on direct organogenesis from different explants of various potato genotypes. *Biotechnology*, 3, 187-193.
- BANERJEE, A. K., PRAT, S. & HANNAPEL, D. J. 2006. Efficient production of transgenic potato (*S. tuberosum* L. ssp. andigena) plants via *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*-mediated transformation. *Plant Science*, 170, 732-738.
- BARKER, W. 1953. A method for the *in vitro* culturing of potato tubers. *Science*, 118, 384-385.
- BARRANGOU, R., FREMAUX, C., DEVEAU, H., RICHARDS, M., BOYAVAL, P., MOINEAU, S., ROMERO, D. A. & HORVATH, P. 2007. CRISPR provides acquired resistance against viruses in prokaryotes. *Science*, 315, 1709-12.
- BARRELL, P. J., MEIYALAGHAN, S., JACOBS, J. M. & CONNER, A. J. 2013. Applications of biotechnology and genomics in potato improvement. *Plant Biotechnol Journal*, 11, 907-20.
- BEAUJEAN, A., SANGWAN, R., LECARDONNEL, A. & SANGWAN-NORREEL, B. 1998. *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of three economically important potato cultivars using sliced internodal explants: an efficient protocol of transformation. *Journal of Experimental Botany*, 49, 1589-1595.
- BHASKAR, P. B., WU, L., BUSSE, J. S., WHITTY, B. R., HAMERNIK, A. J., JANSKY, S. H., BUELL, C. R., BETHKE, P. C. & JIANG, J. 2010. Suppression of the *vacuolar invertase* gene prevents cold-induced sweetening in potato. *Plant Physiology*, 154, 939-948.
- BOCH, J., SCHOLZE, H., SCHORNACK, S., LANDGRAF, A., HAHN, S., KAY, S., LAHAYE, T., NICKSTADT, A. & BONAS, U. 2009. Breaking the code of DNA binding specificity of TAL-type III effectors. *Science*, 326, 1509-1512.
- BORTESI, L. & FISCHER, R. 2015. The CRISPR/Cas9 system for plant genome editing and beyond. *Biotechnology Advances*, 33, 41-52.
- BROOKS, C., NEKRASOV, V., LIPPMAN, Z. B. & VAN ECK, J. 2014. Efficient gene editing in tomato in the first generation using the clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats/CRISPR-associated9 system. *Plant Physiology*, 166, 1292-7.

- BUTLER, N. M., ATKINS, P. A., VOYTAS, D. F. & DOUCHES, D. S. 2015. Generation and inheritance of targeted mutations in potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) using the CRISPR/Cas system. *PLoS One*, 10, e0144591.
- BUTLER, N. M., BALTES, N. J., VOYTAS, D. F. & DOUCHES, D. S. 2016. Geminivirus-mediated genome editing in potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) using sequence-specific nucleases. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 7.
- CAMIRE, M. E., KUBOW, S. & DONNELLY, D. J. 2009. Potatoes and human health. *Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition*, 49, 823-40.
- CAMPENHOUT, C. V., CABOCHETTE, P., VEILLARD, A.-C., LACZIK, M., ZELISKO-SCHMIDT, A., SABATEL, C., DHAINAUT, M., VANHOLLEBEKE, B., GUEYDAN, C. & KRUYIS, V. 2019. Guidelines for optimized gene knockout using CRISPR/Cas9. *BioTechniques*, 66, 295-302.
- CAMPOS, N. A., DA SILVA, G. J., DE PAULA, M. F. B., RODRIGUES, T. B., RODRIGUES, L. A. Z. & PAIVA, L. V. 2016. Direct organogenesis protocol from shoot segments of 'Solanum tuberosum'cv. Monalisa. *Australian Journal of Crop Science*, 10, 964.
- CHAWLA, R., SHAKYA, R. & ROMMENS, C. M. 2012. Tuber-specific silencing of *asparagine synthetase-1* reduces the acrylamide-forming potential of potatoes grown in the field without affecting tuber shape and yield. *Plant Biotechnology Journal*, 10, 913-924.
- CHRISTIANSON, M. & WARNICK, D. 1983. Competence and determination in the process of in vitro shoot organogenesis. *Developmental Biology*, 95, 288-293.
- CIP. 2017. *Potato* [Online]. International Potato Center. Available: <https://cipotato.org/potato/> [Accessed 05 September 2017].
- CIP. 2018. *Potato processing and uses* [Online]. Lima, Peru: INTERNATIONAL POTATO CENTER. Available: <https://cipotato.org/crops/potato/potato-processing-uses/> [Accessed 15 October 2018].
- CLASEN, B. M., STODDARD, T. J., LUO, S., DEMOREST, Z. L., LI, J., CEDRONE, F., TIBEBU, R., DAVISON, S., RAY, E. E., DAULHAC, A., COFFMAN, A., YABANDITH, A., RETTERATH, A., HAUN, W., BALTES, N. J., MATHIS, L., VOYTAS, D. F. & ZHANG, F. 2016. Improving cold storage and processing traits in potato through targeted gene knockout. *Plant Biotechnology Journal*, 14, 169-176.
- CONG, L., RAN, F. A., COX, D., LIN, S., BARRETTO, R., HABIB, N., HSU, P. D., WU, X., JIANG, W. & MARRAFFINI, L. A. 2013. Multiplex genome engineering using CRISPR/Cas systems. *Science*, 339, 819-823.
- CORPET, F. 1988. Multiple sequence alignment with hierarchical clustering. *Nucleic Acids Research*, 16, 10881-10890.
- CRAIG, W., GARGANO, D., SCOTTI, N., NGUYEN, T., LAO, N., KAVANAGH, T., DIX, P. & CARDI, T. 2005. Direct gene transfer in potato: a comparison of particle bombardment of leaf explants and PEG-mediated transformation of protoplasts. *Plant Cell Reports*, 24, 603-611.
- DE BLOCK, M. 1988. Genotype-independent leaf disc transformation of potato (*Solanum tuberosum*) using *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics*, 76, 767-74.

- DE HAAN, S. & RODRIGUEZ, F. 2016. Potato origin and production. *In*: SINGH, J. & KAUR, L. (eds.) *Advances in Potato Chemistry and Technology*. 2nd ed. UK: Academic Press.
- DHITAL, S. P., LIM, H. T. & MANANDHAR, H. K. 2011. Direct and efficient plant regeneration from different explants sources of potato cultivars as influenced by plant growth regulators. *Nepal Journal of Science and Technology*, 12, 1-6.
- DIRETTO, G., TAVAZZA, R., WELSCH, R., PIZZICHINI, D., MOURGUES, F., PAPACCHIOLI, V., BEYER, P. & GIULIANO, G. 2006. Metabolic engineering of potato tuber carotenoids through tuber-specific silencing of *lycopene epsilon cyclase*. *BMC Plant Biology*, 6, 1-11.
- DOENCH, J. G., HARTENIAN, E., GRAHAM, D. B., TOTHOVA, Z., HEGDE, M., SMITH, I., SULLENDER, M., EBERT, B. L., XAVIER, R. J. & ROOT, D. E. 2014. Rational design of highly active sgRNAs for CRISPR-Cas9-mediated gene inactivation. *Nature Biotechnology*, 32, 1262-1267.
- DONNELLY, D. J., COLEMAN, W. K. & COLEMAN, S. E. 2003. Potato microtuber production and performance: a review. *American journal of potato research*, 80, 103-115.
- DOYLE, J. 1991. DNA Protocols for Plants. *In*: HEWITT, G. M., JOHNSTON, A. W. B. & YOUNG, J. P. W. (eds.) *Molecular Techniques in Taxonomy*. Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer Berlin Heidelberg.
- DRAFFEHN, A. M., MELLER, S., LI, L. & GEBHARDT, C. 2010. Natural diversity of potato (*Solanum tuberosum*) invertases. *BMC Plant Biology*, 10, 271.
- ENCISO-RODRIGUEZ, F., MANRIQUE-CARPINTERO, N. C., NADAKUDUTI, S. S., BUELL, C. R., ZARKA, D. & DOUCHES, D. S. 2019. Overcoming self-incompatibility in diploid potato using CRISPR-Cas9. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 10, 376.
- ESTRADA, R., TOVAR, P. & DODDS, J. H. 1986. Induction of *in vitro* tubers in a broad range of potato genotypes. *Plant Cell, Tissue and Organ Culture*, 7, 3-10.
- EWING, E. E. & WAREING, P. F. 1978. Shoot, stolon, and tuber formation on potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) cuttings in response to photoperiod. *Plant Physiology*, 61, 348-353.
- FAOSTAT. 2020a. *Crops and livestock products* [Online]. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. Available: <http://www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data/TP> [Accessed 17 Jun 2020].
- FAOSTAT. 2020b. *Crops production* [Online]. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. Available: <http://www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data/QC> [Accessed 17 Jun 2020].
- FEHÉR, A., FELFÖLDI, K., PREISZNER, J. & DUDITS, D. 1991. PEG-mediated transformation of leaf protoplasts of *Solanum tuberosum* L. cultivars. *Plant Cell, Tissue and Organ Culture*, 27, 105-114.
- FENG, Z., ZHANG, B., DING, W., LIU, X., YANG, D. L., WEI, P., CAO, F., ZHU, S., ZHANG, F., MAO, Y. & ZHU, J. K. 2013. Efficient genome editing in plants using a CRISPR/Cas system. *Cell Research*, 23, 1229-1232.
- FERREIRA, S. J. & SONNEWALD, U. 2012. The mode of sucrose degradation in potato tubers determines the fate of assimilate utilization. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 3, 23.

- FOSSI, M., AMUNDSON, K., KUPPU, S., BRITT, A. & COMAI, L. 2019. Regeneration of *Solanum tuberosum* plants from protoplasts induces widespread genome instability. *Plant Physiology*, 180, 78-86.
- FOULGER, D. & JONES, M. 1986. Improved efficiency of genotype-dependent regeneration from protoplasts of important potato cultivars. *Plant Cell Reports*, 5, 72-76.
- FSANZ. 2019. *Current GM applications and approvals* [Online]. Food Standards Australia New Zealand. Available: <https://www.foodstandards.gov.au/consumer/gmfood/applications/Pages/default.aspx> [Accessed 22 Jun 2020].
- GAJ, T., GERSBACH, C. A. & BARBAS, C. F., 3RD 2013. ZFN, TALEN, and CRISPR/Cas-based methods for genome engineering. *Trends in Biotechnology*, 31, 397-405.
- GAMBORG, O. L. C., MILLER, R. A. & OJIMA, K. 1968. Nutrient requirements of suspension cultures of soybean root cells. *Experimental Cell Research*, 50, 151-158.
- GAO, J. P., WANG, G. H., MA, S. Y., XIE, X. D., WU, X. W., ZHANG, X. T., WU, Y. Q., ZHAO, P. & XIA, Q. Y. 2015. CRISPR/Cas9-mediated targeted mutagenesis in *Nicotiana tabacum*. *Plant Molecular Biology*, 87, 99-110.
- GARNER, N. & BLAKE, J. 1989. The induction and development of potato microtubers *in vitro* on media free of growth regulating substances. *Annals of Botany*, 63, 663-674.
- GEORGE, E. F., HALL, M. A. & DE KLERK, G.-J. 2008. The components of plant tissue culture media II: organic additions, osmotic and pH effects, and support systems. *Plant propagation by tissue culture*. Springer.
- GHOSH, S., MAJUMDAR, S., SARKAR, D. & DATTA, K. 2014. An efficient adventitious shoot regeneration system for potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) using leaf discs. *Journal of Plant Biochemistry and Biotechnology*, 24, 298-304.
- GONZÁLEZ, M. N., MASSA, G. A., ANDERSSON, M., TURESSON, H., OLSSON, N., FÄLT, A.-S., STORANI, L., DÉCIMA ONETO, C. A., HOFVANDER, P. & FEINGOLD, S. E. 2020. Reduced enzymatic browning in potato tubers by specific editing of a polyphenol oxidase gene via ribonucleoprotein complexes delivery of the CRISPR/Cas9 system. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 10, 1649.
- GOPAL, J., MINOCHA, J. L. & DHALIWAL, H. S. 1998. Microtuberization in potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.). *Plant Cell Reports*, 17, 794-798.
- GUPTA, S., KUMAR, A., PATEL, R. & KUMAR, V. 2021. Genetically modified crop regulations: scope and opportunity using the CRISPR-Cas9 genome editing approach. *Molecular Biology Reports*, 48, 4851-4863.
- HAN, E. & LEE, M. 2015. An efficient transformation method for a potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L. var. Atlantic). *Journal of Plant Biotechnology* 42, 77-82.
- HARDIGAN, M. A., CRISOVAN, E., HAMILTON, J. P., KIM, J., LAIMBEER, P., LEISNER, C. P., MANRIQUE-CARPINTERO, N. C., NEWTON, L., PHAM, G. M. & VAILLANCOURT, B. 2016. Genome reduction uncovers a large dispensable genome and adaptive role for copy number variation in asexually propagated *Solanum tuberosum*. *The Plant Cell*, 28, 388-405.

- HARRIES, L., BINGHAM, C., BELLANNE-CHANTELOT, C., HATTERSLEY, A. & ELLARD, S. 2005. The position of premature termination codons in the *hepatocyte nuclear factor-1 beta* gene determines susceptibility to nonsense-mediated decay. *Human Genetics*, 118, 214-224.
- HILSCHER, J., BURSTMAYR, H. & STOGER, E. 2017. Targeted modification of plant genomes for precision crop breeding. *Biotechnol Journal*, 12.
- IMAI, R., HAMADA, H., LIU, Y., LINGHU, Q., KUMAGAI, Y., NAGIRA, Y., MIKI, R. & TAOKA, N. 2020. *In planta* particle bombardment (iPB): A new method for plant transformation and genome editing. *Plant Biotechnology*, 20.0206 a.
- ISAAA. 2020. *GM Approval Database* [Online]. International Service for the Acquisition of Agri-Biotech Applications. Available: <https://www.isaaa.org/gmapprovaldatabase/default.asp> [Accessed 22 Jun 2020].
- ISHINO, Y., SHINAGAWA, H., MAKINO, K., AMEMURA, M. & NAKATA, A. 1987. Nucleotide sequence of the *iap* gene, responsible for alkaline phosphatase isozyme conversion in *Escherichia coli*, and identification of the gene product. *Journal of Bacteriology*, 169, 5429-5433.
- JACKSON, A. L., BARTZ, S. R., SCHELTER, J., KOBAYASHI, S. V., BURCHARD, J., MAO, M., LI, B., CAVET, G. & LINSLEY, P. S. 2003. Expression profiling reveals off-target gene regulation by RNAi. *Nature biotechnology*, 21, 635.
- JACKSON, S. D. 1999. Multiple signaling pathways control tuber induction in potato. *Plant Physiology*, 119, 1-8.
- JACQUIER, A. & DUJON, B. 1985. An intron-encoded protein is active in a gene conversion process that spreads an intron into a mitochondrial gene. *Cell*, 41, 383-394.
- JEONG, S. Y., AHN, H., RYU, J., OH, Y., SIVANANDHAN, G., WON, K. H., PARK, Y. D., KIM, J. S., KIM, H., LIM, Y. P. & KIM, S. G. 2019. Generation of early-flowering Chinese cabbage (*Brassica rapa* spp. *pekinensis*) through CRISPR/Cas9-mediated genome editing. *Plant Biotechnology Reports*, 13, 491-499.
- JIANG, W., ZHOU, H., BI, H., FROMM, M., YANG, B. & WEEKS, D. P. 2013. Demonstration of CRISPR/Cas9/sgRNA-mediated targeted gene modification in Arabidopsis, tobacco, sorghum and rice. *Nucleic Acids Research*, 41, e188.
- JINEK, M., CHYLINSKI, K., FONFARA, I., HAUER, M., DOUDNA, J. A. & CHARPENTIER, E. 2012. A programmable dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. *Science*, 337, 816-821.
- JOHANSEN, I. E., LIU, Y., JØRGENSEN, B., BENNETT, E. P., ANDREASSON, E., NIELSEN, K. L., BLENNOW, A. & PETERSEN, B. L. 2019. High efficacy full allelic CRISPR/Cas9 gene editing in tetraploid potato. *Scientific Reports*, 9, 1-7.
- JONES, H., KARP, A. & JONES, M. G. 1989. Isolation, culture, and regeneration of plants from potato protoplasts. *Plant Cell Reports*, 8, 307-311.
- JONES, M., BRIGHT, S., NELSON, R., FOULGER, D., CREISSEN, G., KARP, A. & OOMS, G. 1983. Variation in plants regenerated from protoplasts and complex explants of potato. *Protoplasts 1983*. Springer.

- JONES, M. G., OUTLAW, W. H. & LOWRY, O. H. 1977. Enzymic assay of 10⁻⁷ to 10⁻¹⁴ moles of sucrose in plant tissues. *Plant Physiology*, 60, 379-383.
- KIKUTA, Y., FUJINO, K., SAITO, W., MASUDA, K. & OKAZAWA, Y. 1986. Protoplast culture of potato: an improved procedure for isolating viable protoplasts. *Journal of the Faculty of Agriculture, Hokkaido University= 北海道大學農學部紀要*, 62, 429-439.
- KUMAR, P. & JANDER, G. 2017. Concurrent overexpression of *Arabidopsis thaliana* cystathionine gamma-synthase and silencing of endogenous methionine gamma-lyase enhance tuber methionine content in *Solanum tuberosum*. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*, 65, 2737-2742.
- KUMLAY, A. M. & ERCISLI, S. 2015. Callus induction, shoot proliferation and root regeneration of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) stem node and leaf explants under long-day conditions. *Biotechnology & Biotechnological Equipment*, 29, 1075-1084.
- KUSANO, H., OHNUMA, M., MUTSURO-AOKI, H., ASAH, T., ICHINOSAWA, D., ONODERA, H., ASANO, K., NODA, T., HORIE, T., FUKUMOTO, K., KIHIRA, M., TERAMURA, H., YAZAKI, K., UMEMOTO, N., MURANAKA, T. & SHIMADA, H. 2018. Establishment of a modified CRISPR/Cas9 system with increased mutagenesis frequency using the translational enhancer dMac3 and multiple guide RNAs in potato. *Scientific Reports*, 8, 13753.
- KYRIAKIDOU, M., ACHAKKAGARI, S. R., LÓPEZ, J. H. G., ZHU, X., TANG, C. Y., TAI, H. H., ANGLIN, N. L., ELLIS, D. & STRÖMVIK, M. V. 2020. Structural genome analysis in cultivated potato taxa. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics*, 133, 951-966.
- LAM, H.-M., WONG, P., CHAN, H.-K., YAM, K.-M., CHEN, L., CHOW, C.-M. & CORUZZI, G. M. 2003. Overexpression of the ASN1 gene enhances nitrogen status in seeds of *Arabidopsis*. *Plant physiology*, 132, 926-935.
- LI, J.-F., NORVILLE, J. E., AACH, J., MCCORMACK, M., ZHANG, D., BUSH, J., CHURCH, G. M. & SHEEN, J. 2013. Multiplex and homologous recombination-mediated genome editing in *Arabidopsis* and *Nicotiana benthamiana* using guide RNA and Cas9. *Nature Biotechnology*, 31, 688-691.
- LIANG, G., ZHANG, H., LOU, D. & YU, D. 2016. Selection of highly efficient sgRNAs for CRISPR/Cas9-based plant genome editing. *Scientific Reports*, 6, 21451.
- LIANG, Z., CHEN, K., LI, T., ZHANG, Y., WANG, Y., ZHAO, Q., LIU, J., ZHANG, H., LIU, C., RAN, Y. & GAO, C. 2017. Efficient DNA-free genome editing of bread wheat using CRISPR/Cas9 ribonucleoprotein complexes. *Nature Communications*, 8, 14261.
- LIANG, Z., ZHANG, K., CHEN, K., GAO, C. 2013. Targeted mutagenesis in *Zea mays* using TALENs and the CRISPR/Cas system. *Journal of Genetics and Genomics*, 41, 63-68.
- LIN, C. S., HSU, C. T., YANG, L. H., LEE, L. Y., FU, J. Y., CHENG, Q. W., WU, F. H., HSIAO, H. C. W., ZHANG, Y. & ZHANG, R. 2018. Application of protoplast technology to CRISPR/Cas9 mutagenesis: from single-cell mutation detection to mutant plant regeneration. *Plant Biotechnology Journal*, 16, 1295-1310.
- LYON, F. 1994. IARC monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans. *Some industrial chemicals*, 60, 389.
- MACHIDA-HIRANO, R. 2015. Diversity of potato genetic resources. *Breeding Science*, 65, 26-40.

- MAKAROVA, K. S., WOLF, Y. I., ALKHNABASHI, O. S., COSTA, F., SHAH, S. A., SAUNDERS, S. J., BARRANGOU, R., BROUNS, S. J., CHARPENTIER, E., HAFT, D. H., HORVATH, P., MOINEAU, S., MOJICA, F. J., TERNS, R. M., TERNS, M. P., WHITE, M. F., YAKUNIN, A. F., GARRETT, R. A., VAN DER OOST, J., BACKOFEN, R. & KOONIN, E. V. 2015. An updated evolutionary classification of CRISPR-Cas systems. *Nature Reviews Microbiology*, 13, 722-36.
- MAKHOTENKO, A., KHROMOV, A., SNIGIR, E., MAKAROVA, S., MAKAROV, V., SUPRUNOVA, T., KALININA, N. & TALIANSKY, M. Functional analysis of coilin in virus resistance and stress tolerance of potato *Solanum tuberosum* using CRISPR-Cas9 editing. *Doklady Biochemistry and Biophysics*, 2019. Springer, 88-91.
- MAKINO, S., FUKUMURA, R. & GONDO, Y. 2016. Illegitimate translation causes unexpected gene expression from on-target out-of-frame alleles created by CRISPR-Cas9. *Scientific Reports*, 6, 1-6.
- MALONE, J. G., MITTOVA, V., RATCLIFFE, R. G. & KRUGER, N. J. 2006. The response of carbohydrate metabolism in potato tubers to low temperature. *Plant and Cell Physiology*, 47, 1309-1322.
- MAO, Y., ZHANG, H., XU, N., ZHANG, B., GOU, F. & ZHU, J.-K. 2013. Application of the CRISPR-Cas system for efficient genome engineering in plants. *Molecular Plant*, 6, 2008-2011.
- MATSUURA-ENDO, C., OHARA-TAKADA, A., CHUDA, Y., ONO, H., YADA, H., YOSHIDA, M., KOBAYASHI, A., TSUDA, S., TAKIGAWA, S., NODA, T., YAMAUCHI, H. & MORI, M. 2006. Effects of storage temperature on the contents of sugars and free amino acids in tubers from different potato cultivars and acrylamide in chips. *Bioscience, Biotechnology, and Biochemistry*, 70, 1173-1180.
- MATTHÄUS, B. & HAASE, N. U. 2014. Acrylamide—Still a matter of concern for fried potato food? *European Journal of Lipid Science and Technology*, 116, 675-687.
- MCGREGOR, I. 2007. The fresh potato market. In: VREUGDENHIL, D. (ed.) *Potato Biology and Biotechnology: Advances and Perspectives*. The Netherlands: Elsevier.
- MCKENZIE, M. J., CHEN, R. K., HARRIS, J. C., ASHWORTH, M. J. & BRUMMELL, D. A. 2013. Post-translational regulation of acid invertase activity by vacuolar invertase inhibitor affects resistance to cold-induced sweetening of potato tubers. *Plant, Cell & Environment*, 36, 176-85.
- MCKIBBIN, R. S., MUTTUCUMARU, N., PAUL, M. J., POWERS, S. J., BURRELL, M. M., COATES, S., PURCELL, P. C., TIESSEN, A., GEIGENBERGER, P. & HALFORD, N. G. 2006. Production of high-starch, low-glucose potatoes through over-expression of the metabolic regulator SnRK1. *Plant Biotechnology Journal*, 4, 409-418.
- MENZ, J., MODRZEJEWSKI, D., HARTUNG, F., WILHELM, R. & SPRINK, T. 2020. Genome edited crops touch the market: a view on the global development and regulatory environment. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 11, 586027.
- MERCHANTE, C., STEPANOVA, A. N. & ALONSO, J. M. 2017. Translation regulation in plants: an interesting past, an exciting present and a promising future. Wiley Online Library.
- MILLAM, S. 2004. *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation of potato. In: CURTIS, I. S. (ed.) *Transgenic Crops of the World: Essential Protocols*. Dordrecht: Springer Netherlands.
- MILLAM, S. 2007. Potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.). *Agrobacterium Protocols Volume 2*, 25-35.

- MILROY, M. & JONES, M. 2017. Potato: international food security and export growth potential. A series of bulletins outlining key research in the School of Veterinary & Life Sciences [Online].
- MOON, K.-B., PARK, J.-S., PARK, S.-J., LEE, H.-J., CHO, H.-S., MIN, S.-R., PARK, Y.-I., JEON, J.-H. & KIM, H.-S. 2021. A more accessible, time-saving, and efficient method for *in vitro* plant regeneration from potato protoplasts. *Plants*, 10, 781.
- MOSCOU, M. J. & BOGDANOVA, A. J. 2009. A simple cipher governs DNA recognition by TAL effectors. *Science*, 326, 1501-1501.
- MOTTRAM, D. S., WEDZICHA, B. L. & DODSON, A. T. 2002. Food chemistry: acrylamide is formed in the Maillard reaction. *Nature*, 419, 448.
- MURASHIGE, T. & SKOOG, F. 1962. A revised medium for rapid growth and bio assays with tobacco tissue cultures. *Physiologia Plantarum*, 15, 473-497.
- MUTTUCUMARU, N., POWERS, S., ELMORE, J., BRIDDON, A., MOTTRAM, D. & HALFORD, N. 2014. Evidence for the complex relationship between free amino acid and sugar concentrations and acrylamide-forming potential in potato. *Annals of Applied Biology*, 164, 286-300.
- NADAKUDUTI, S. S., STARKER, C. G., KO, D. K., JAYAKODY, T. B., BUELL, C. R., VOYTAS, D. F. & DOUCHES, D. S. 2019a. Evaluation of methods to assess *in vivo* activity of engineered genome-editing nucleases in protoplasts. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 10, 110.
- NADAKUDUTI, S. S., STARKER, C. G., VOYTAS, D. F., BUELL, C. R. & DOUCHES, D. S. 2019b. Genome editing in potato with CRISPR/Cas9. *Plant Genome Editing with CRISPR Systems*. Springer.
- NAKADE, S., YAMAMOTO, T. & SAKUMA, T. 2017. Cas9, Cpf1 and C2c1/2/3-What's next? *Bioengineered*, 8, 265-273.
- NAKAYASU, M., AKIYAMA, R., LEE, H. J., OSAKABE, K., OSAKABE, Y., WATANABE, B., SUGIMOTO, Y., UMEMOTO, N., SAITO, K. & MURANAKA, T. 2018. Generation of α -solanine-free hairy roots of potato by CRISPR/Cas9 mediated genome editing of the *St16DOX* gene. *Plant Physiology and Biochemistry*, 131, 70-77.
- NICOLIA, A., ANDERSSON, M., HOFVANDER, P., FESTA, G. & CARDI, T. 2021. Tomato protoplasts as cell target for ribonucleoprotein (RNP)-mediated multiplexed genome editing. *Plant Cell, Tissue and Organ Culture* 144, 463-467.
- NICOLIA, A., PROUX-WERA, E., AHMAN, I., ONKOKESUNG, N., ANDERSSON, M., ANDREASSON, E. & ZHU, L. H. 2015. Targeted gene mutation in tetraploid potato through transient TALEN expression in protoplasts. *Journal of Biotechnology*, 204, 17-24.
- NISHITANI, C., HIRAI, N., KOMORI, S., WADA, M., OKADA, K., OSAKABE, K., YAMAMOTO, T. & OSAKABE, Y. 2016. Efficient genome editing in apple using a CRISPR/Cas9 system. *Scientific Reports*, 6, 1-8.
- OOMS, G., BOSSEN, M. E., BURRELL, M. M. & KARP, A. 1986. Genetic manipulation in potato with *Agrobacterium rhizogenes*. *Potato Research*, 29, 367-379.
- PAN, C., YE, L., QIN, L., LIU, X., HE, Y., WANG, J., CHEN, L. & LU, G. 2016. CRISPR/Cas9-mediated efficient and heritable targeted mutagenesis in tomato plants in the first and later generations. *Scientific Reports*, 6, 24765.

- PARK, J., BAE, S. & KIM, J.-S. 2015. Cas-Designer: a web-based tool for choice of CRISPR-Cas9 target sites. *Bioinformatics*, 31, 4014-4016.
- PAUL, V., EZEKIEL, R. & PANDEY, R. 2016. Sprout suppression on potato: need to look beyond CIPC for more effective and safer alternatives. *Journal of Food Science and Technology*, 53, 1-18.
- PAUWELS, L., DE CLERCQ, R., GOOSSENS, J., IÑIGO, S., WILLIAMS, C., RON, M., BRITT, A. & GOOSSENS, A. 2018. A dual sgRNA approach for functional genomics in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. *G3: Genes, Genomes, Genetics*, 8, 2603-2615.
- PAVLETICH, N. P. & PABO, C. O. 1991. Zinc finger-DNA recognition: crystal structure of a Zif268-DNA complex at 2.1 Å. *Science*, 252, 809-817.
- PEDRESCHI, F., KAACK, K. & GRANBY, K. 2006. Acrylamide content and color development in fried potato strips. *Food Research International*, 39, 40-46.
- PENG, R., LIN, G. & LI, J. 2016. Potential pitfalls of CRISPR/Cas9-mediated genome editing. *The FEBS journal*, 283, 1218-1231.
- PENG, X.-Q., HU, J.-J. & HUO, M.-J. 2008. Establishment of Efficient Regeneration System from Potato Variety "Atlantic"[J]. *Hunan Agricultural Sciences*, 2, 010.
- POPP, M. W. & MAQUAT, L. E. 2016. Leveraging rules of nonsense-mediated mRNA decay for genome engineering and personalized medicine. *Cell*, 165, 1319-1322.
- POTATO GENOME SEQUENCING, C., XU, X., PAN, S., CHENG, S., ZHANG, B., MU, D., NI, P., ZHANG, G., YANG, S., LI, R., WANG, J., ORJEDA, G., GUZMAN, F., TORRES, M., LOZANO, R., PONCE, O., MARTINEZ, D., DE LA CRUZ, G., CHAKRABARTI, S. K., PATIL, V. U., SKRYABIN, K. G., KUZNETSOV, B. B., RAVIN, N. V., KOLGANOVA, T. V., BELETSKY, A. V., MARDANOV, A. V., DI GENOVA, A., BOLSER, D. M., MARTIN, D. M., LI, G., YANG, Y., KUANG, H., HU, Q., XIONG, X., BISHOP, G. J., SAGREDO, B., MEJIA, N., ZAGORSKI, W., GROMADKA, R., GAWOR, J., SZCZESNY, P., HUANG, S., ZHANG, Z., LIANG, C., HE, J., LI, Y., HE, Y., XU, J., ZHANG, Y., XIE, B., DU, Y., QU, D., BONIERBALE, M., GHISLAIN, M., HERRERA MDEL, R., GIULIANO, G., PIETRELLA, M., PERROTTA, G., FACELLA, P., O'BRIEN, K., FEINGOLD, S. E., BARREIRO, L. E., MASSA, G. A., DIAMBRA, L., WHITTY, B. R., VAILLANCOURT, B., LIN, H., MASSA, A. N., GEOFFROY, M., LUNDBACK, S., DELLAPENNA, D., BUELL, C. R., SHARMA, S. K., MARSHALL, D. F., WAUGH, R., BRYAN, G. J., DESTEFANIS, M., NAGY, I., MILBOURNE, D., THOMSON, S. J., FIERS, M., JACOBS, J. M., NIELSEN, K. L., SONDERKAER, M., IOVENE, M., TORRES, G. A., JIANG, J., VEILLEUX, R. E., BACHEM, C. W., DE BOER, J., BORM, T., KLOOSTERMAN, B., VAN ECK, H., DATEMA, E., HEKKERT, B., GOVERSE, A., VAN HAM, R. C. & VISSER, R. G. 2011. Genome sequence and analysis of the tuber crop potato. *Nature*, 475, 189-95.
- PRESSEY, R. & SHAW, R. 1966. Effect of temperature on invertase, invertase inhibitor, and sugars in potato tubers. *Plant Physiology*, 41, 1657-1661.
- R CORE TEAM. 2020. *R: A language and environment for statistical computing* [Online]. Vienna, Austria: R Foundation for Statistical Computing. Available: <https://www.R-project.org/> [Accessed 2020].
- RAHMAN, M., ISLAM, R., HOSSAIN, M. & ISLAM, M. 2010. Role of sucrose, glucose and maltose on conventional potato micropropagation. *Journal of Agricultural Technology*, 6, 733-739.

- REZENDE, R. K. S., PASQUAL, M., PAIVA, L. V., PAIVA, R. & MASETTO, T. E. 2013. *In vitro* organogenesis of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) cultivar Atlantic for the genetic transformation. *Semina: Ciências Agrárias*, 34, 1055-1064.
- RIO, D. C., ARES, M., HANNON, G. J. & NILSEN, T. W. 2010. Purification of RNA using TRIzol (TRI reagent). *Cold Spring Harbor Protocols*, 2010, pdb. prot5439.
- RODRÍGUEZ-FALCÓN, M., BOU, J. & PRAT, S. 2006. Seasonal control of tuberization in potato: conserved elements with the flowering response. *Annual Review of Plant Biology*, 57, 151-180.
- ROMANO, A., RAEMAKERS, K., VISSER, R. & MOOIBROEK, H. 2001. Transformation of potato (*Solanum tuberosum*) using particle bombardment. *Plant Cell Reports*, 20, 198-204.
- ROMMENS, C. M., YAN, H., SWORDS, K., RICHAEEL, C. & YE, J. 2008. Low-acrylamide French fries and potato chips. *Plant Biotechnology Journal*, 6, 843-853.
- ROSS, H. & DAVIES, H. 1992. Sucrose metabolism in tubers of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.): effects of sink removal and sucrose flux on sucrose-degrading enzymes. *Plant Physiology*, 98, 287-293.
- RYDBERG, P., ERIKSSON, S., TAREKE, E., KARLSSON, P., EHRENBORG, L. & TÖRNQVIST, M. 2003. Investigations of factors that influence the acrylamide content of heated foodstuffs. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*, 51, 7012-7018.
- SCF, E. 2002. Opinion of the scientific committee on food on new findings regarding the presence of acrylamide in food, European Commission Scientific Committee on Food.
- SCHALLER, G. E., BISHOPP, A. & KIEBER, J. J. 2015. The yin-yang of hormones: cytokinin and auxin interactions in plant development. *The Plant Cell*, 27, 44-63.
- SCHINDELIN, J., ARGANDA-CARRERAS, I., FRISE, E., KAYNIG, V., LONGAIR, M., PIETZSCH, T., PREIBISCH, S., RUEDEN, C., SAALFELD, S. & SCHMID, B. 2012. Fiji: an open-source platform for biological-image analysis. *Nature methods*, 9, 676-682.
- SCIENTIFIC COMMITTEE ON FOOD 2002. Opinion of the scientific committee on food on new findings regarding the presence of acrylamide in food. Belgium: European Commission, Scientific Committee on Food.
- SEABROOK, J. E., DOUGLASS, L. K. & ARNOLD, D. A. 2004. Effect of leaves on microtubers produced from potato single-node cuttings *in vitro*. *American Journal Of Potato Rresearch*, 81, 1-5.
- SHAN, Q., WANG, Y., LI, J. & GAO, C. 2014. Genome editing in rice and wheat using the CRISPR/Cas system. *Nature Protocols*, 9, 2395.
- SHEPARD, J. F. & TOTTEN, R. E. 1977. Mesophyll cell protoplasts of potato: isolation, proliferation, and plant regeneration. *Plant Physiology*, 60, 313-316.
- SHEPHERD, L., BRADSHAW, J., DALE, M., MCNICOL, J., PONT, S., MOTTRAM, D. S. & DAVIES, H. 2010. Variation in acrylamide producing potential in potato: segregation of the trait in a breeding population. *Food Chemistry*, 123, 568-573.
- SOWOKINOS, J. R. 2001. Biochemical and molecular control of cold-induced sweetening in potatoes. *American Journal of Potato Research*, 78, 221-236.

- STEIN, O. & GRANOT, D. 2019. An overview of sucrose synthases in plants. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 10, 95.
- STERNBERG, S. H., REDDING, S., JINEK, M., GREENE, E. C. & DOUDNA, J. A. 2014. DNA interrogation by the CRISPR RNA-guided endonuclease Cas9. *Nature*, 507, 62-67.
- SVITASHEV, S., SCHWARTZ, C., LENDERTS, B., YOUNG, J. K. & MARK CIGAN, A. 2016. Genome editing in maize directed by CRISPR-Cas9 ribonucleoprotein complexes. *Nature Communications*, 7, 13274.
- TAREKE, E., RYDBERG, P., KARLSSON, P., ERIKSSON, S. & TÖRNQVIST, M. 2000. Acrylamide: a cooking carcinogen? *Chemical research in toxicology*, 13, 517-522.
- TUNCEL, A., CORBIN, K. R., AHN-JARVIS, J., HARRIS, S., HAWKINS, E., SMEDLEY, M. A., HARWOOD, W., WARREN, F. J., PATRON, N. J. & SMITH, A. M. 2019. Cas9-mediated mutagenesis of potato starch-branching enzymes generates a range of tuber starch phenotypes. *Plant Biotechnology Journal*, 17, 2259-2271.
- UETA, R., ABE, C., WATANABE, T., SUGANO, S. S., ISHIHARA, R., EZURA, H., OSAKABE, Y. & OSAKABE, K. 2017. Rapid breeding of parthenocarpic tomato plants using CRISPR/Cas9. *Scientific Reports*, 7, 1-8.
- USDA 2017. *Potatoes 2016 Summary*, National Agricultural Statistics Service, United States Department of Agriculture.
- VEILLET, F., CHAUVIN, L., KERMARREC, M.-P., SEVESTRE, F., MERRER, M., TERRET, Z., SZYDLOWSKI, N., DEVAUX, P., GALLOIS, J.-L. & CHAUVIN, J.-E. 2019a. The *Solanum tuberosum* GBSSI gene: a target for assessing gene and base editing in tetraploid potato. *Plant Cell Reports*.
- VEILLET, F., KERMARREC, M.-P., CHAUVIN, L., CHAUVIN, J.-E. & NOGUÉ, F. 2020. CRISPR-induced indels and base editing using the *Staphylococcus aureus* Cas9 in potato. *Plos One*, 15, e0235942.
- VEILLET, F., PERROT, L., CHAUVIN, L., KERMARREC, M.-P., GUYON-DEBAST, A., CHAUVIN, J.-E., NOGUÉ, F. & MAZIER, M. 2019b. Transgene-free genome editing in tomato and potato plants using *Agrobacterium*-mediated delivery of a CRISPR/Cas9 cytidine base editor. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences*, 20, 402.
- VINTERHATER, D., DRAGIEEVIE, I., VINTERHALTER, B. 2008. Potato *in vitro* culture techniques and biotechnology. *Fruit, Vegetable and Cereal Science and Biotechnology*, 2, 16-45.
- VOYTAS, D. F. 2013. Plant genome engineering with sequence-specific nucleases. *Annual Review of Plant Biology*, 64, 327-350.
- WANG, S., ZHANG, S., WANG, W., XIONG, X., MENG, F. & CUI, X. 2015. Efficient targeted mutagenesis in potato by the CRISPR/Cas9 system. *Plant Cell Reports*, 34, 1473-1476.
- WEBB, K. J., OSIFO, E. O. & HENSHAW, G. G. 1983. Shoot regeneration from leaflet discs of six cultivars of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* subsp. *tuberosum*). *Plant Science Letters*, 30, 1-8.
- WEBB, R., WILSON, D., SHUMAKER, J., GRAVES, B., HENNINGER, M., WATTS, J., FRANK, J. & MURPHY, H. 1978. Atlantic: A new potato variety with high solids, good processing quality, and resistance to pests. *American Journal of Potato Research*, 55, 141-145.

- WEEKS, D. P. 2017. Gene editing in polyploid crops: wheat, camelina, canola, potato, cotton, peanut, sugar cane, and citrus. *Progress in Molecular Biology and Translational Science*. Elsevier.
- WHEELER, V., EVANS, N., FOULGER, D., WEBB, K., KARP, A., FRANKLIN, J. & BRIGHT, S. 1985. Shoot formation from explant cultures of fourteen potato cultivars and studies of the cytology and morphology of regenerated plants. *Annals of Botany*, 55, 309-320.
- WIBERLEY-BRADFORD, A. E., BUSSE, J. S., JIANG, J. & BETHKE, P. C. 2014. Sugar metabolism, chip color, invertase activity, and gene expression during long-term cold storage of potato (*Solanum tuberosum*) tubers from wild-type and *vacuolar invertase* silencing lines of Katahdin. *BMC Research Notes*, 7, 801.
- WICKHAM, H. 2009. Elegant graphics for data analysis. *Media*, 35, 10.1007.
- WOLFF, J. B. & PRICE, L. 1960. The effect of sugars on chlorophyll biosynthesis in higher plants. *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, 235, 1603-8.
- WOO, J. W., KIM, J., KWON, S. I., CORVALAN, C., CHO, S. W., KIM, H., KIM, S. G., KIM, S. T., CHOE, S. & KIM, J. S. 2015. DNA-free genome editing in plants with preassembled CRISPR-Cas9 ribonucleoproteins. *Nature Biotechnology*, 33, 1162-4.
- WU, L., BHASKAR, P. B., BUSSE, J. S., ZHANG, R., BETHKE, P. C. & JIANG, J. 2011. Developing Cold-Chipping Potato Varieties by Silencing the Vacuolar Invertase Gene. *Crop Science*, 51, 981.
- XIE, K., MINKENBERG, B. & YANG, Y. 2015. Boosting CRISPR/Cas9 multiplex editing capability with the endogenous tRNA-processing system. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 112, 3570-3575.
- XIE, K. & YANG, Y. 2013. RNA-guided genome editing in plants using a CRISPR-Cas system. *Molecular Plant*, 6, 1975-83.
- XING, H.-L., DONG, L., WANG, Z.-P., ZHANG, H.-Y., HAN, C.-Y., LIU, B., WANG, X.-C. & CHEN, Q.-J. 2014. A CRISPR/Cas9 toolkit for multiplex genome editing in plants. *BMC Plant Biology*, 14, 327.
- XU, H., XIAO, T., CHEN, C.-H., LI, W., MEYER, C. A., WU, Q., WU, D., CONG, L., ZHANG, F. & LIU, J. S. 2015. Sequence determinants of improved CRISPR sgRNA design. *Genome research*, 25, 1147-1157.
- YANG, Y. & XIE, K. 2015. Gene targeting and genetic modification of plants via rna-guided genome editing.
- YASMIN, S., NASIRUDDIN, K., BEGUM, R. & TALUKDER, S. 2003. Regeneration and establishment of potato plantlets through callus formation with BAP and NAA. *Asian Journal of Plant Sciences*, 2, 936-940.
- YE, J., COULOURIS, G., ZARETSKAYA, I., CUTCUTACHE, I., ROZEN, S. & MADDEN, T. L. 2012. Primer-BLAST: A tool to design target-specific primers for polymerase chain reaction. *BMC Bioinformatics*, 13, 134.
- YE, J., SHAKYA, R., SHRESTHA, P. & ROMMENS, C. M. 2010. Tuber-specific silencing of the acid invertase gene substantially lowers the acrylamide-forming potential of potato. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry*, 58, 12162-12167.

- YE, M., PENG, Z., TANG, D., YANG, Z., LI, D., XU, Y., ZHANG, C. & HUANG, S. 2018. Generation of self-compatible diploid potato by knockout of S-RNase. *Nature Plants*, 4, 651.
- YEE, N. G. & BUSSELL, W. T. 2007. Good potatoes for good potato crisps, a review of current potato crisp quality control and manufacture. *Food*.
- ZHAN, X., ZHANG, F., ZHONG, Z., CHEN, R., WANG, Y., CHANG, L., BOCK, R., NIE, B. & ZHANG, J. 2019. Generation of virus-resistant potato plants by RNA genome targeting. *Plant Biotechnology Journal*.
- ZHANG, H., ZHANG, J., WEI, P., ZHANG, B., GOU, F., FENG, Z., MAO, Y., YANG, L., ZHANG, H., XU, N. & ZHU, J. K. 2014. The CRISPR/Cas9 system produces specific and homozygous targeted gene editing in rice in one generation. *Plant Biotechnology Journal*, 12, 797-807.
- ZHANG, Y., LIANG, Z., ZONG, Y., WANG, Y., LIU, J., CHEN, K., QIU, J. L. & GAO, C. 2016a. Efficient and transgene-free genome editing in wheat through transient expression of CRISPR/Cas9 DNA or RNA. *Nature Communications*, 7, 12617.
- ZHANG, Z., MAO, Y., HA, S., LIU, W., BOTELLA, J. R. & ZHU, J. K. 2016b. A multiplex CRISPR/Cas9 platform for fast and efficient editing of multiple genes in *Arabidopsis*. *Plant Cell Reports*, 35, 1519-1533.
- ZHAO, X., JAYARATHNA, S., TURESSON, H., FÄLT, A.-S., NESTOR, G., GONZÁLEZ, M. N., OLSSON, N., BEGANOVIC, M., HOFVANDER, P. & ANDERSSON, R. 2021. Amylose starch with no detectable branching developed through DNA-free CRISPR-Cas9 mediated mutagenesis of two starch branching enzymes in potato. *Scientific Reports*, 11, 1-13.
- ZHENG, T., HOU, Y., ZHANG, P., ZHANG, Z., XU, Y., ZHANG, L., NIU, L., YANG, Y., LIANG, D. & YI, F. 2017. Profiling single-guide RNA specificity reveals a mismatch sensitive core sequence. *Scientific Reports*, 7, 40638.
- ZHOU, H., LIU, B., WEEKS, D. P., SPALDING, M. H. & YANG, B. 2014. Large chromosomal deletions and heritable small genetic changes induced by CRISPR/Cas9 in rice. *Nucleic Acids Research*, 42, 10903-14.
- ZHOU, X., ZHA, M., HUANG, J., LI, L., IMRAN, M. & ZHANG, C. 2017. *StMYB44* negatively regulates phosphate transport by suppressing expression of *PHOSPHATE1* in potato. *Journal of Experimental Botany*, 68, 1265-1281.
- ZHU, X., GONG, H., HE, Q., ZENG, Z., BUSSE, J. S., JIN, W., BETHKE, P. C. & JIANG, J. 2016. Silencing of *vacuolar invertase* and *asparagine synthetase* genes and its impact on acrylamide formation of fried potato products. *Plant Biotechnology Journal*, 14, 709-718.
- ZHU, X., RICHAEAL, C., CHAMBERLAIN, P., BUSSE, J. S., BUSSAN, A. J., JIANG, J. & BETHKE, P. C. 2014. *Vacuolar invertase* gene silencing in potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.) improves processing quality by decreasing the frequency of sugar-end defects. *PLoS One*, 9, e93381.